



User Guide

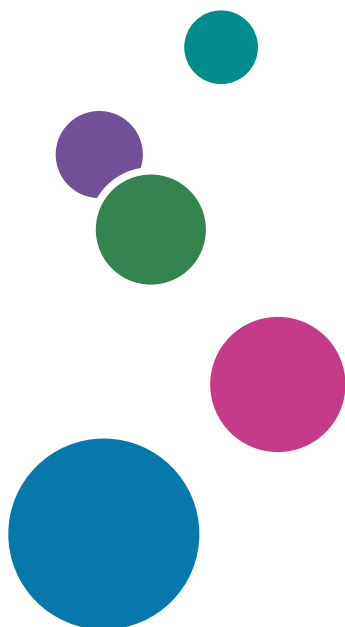
Selected Version

About This Manual	1
Getting Started	2
Copy	3
Fax	4
Print	5
Scan	6
Document Server	7
Web Image Monitor	8
Adding Paper and Toner	9
Troubleshooting	10
Specifications for The Machine	11
Legal and Contact Information	12

For information not found in this manual, see the online manuals available on our web site (<https://www.ricoh.com/>).



For safe and correct use, be sure to read Safety Information before using the machine.



How to Read the Manuals

Symbols Used in the Manuals

This manual uses the following symbols:

Important

Indicates points to pay attention to when using functions. This symbol indicates points that may result in the product or service becoming unusable or result in the loss of data if the instructions are not obeyed. Be sure to read these explanations.

Note

Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

[]

Indicates the names of keys or buttons on the product or display.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

How to Read the Manuals.....	1
Symbols Used in the Manuals.....	1
1. About This Manual	
Abbreviated Names of Options.....	11
2. Getting Started	
Turning On and Off the Power.....	15
Turning On the Main Power.....	15
Turning Off the Main Power.....	16
Energy Saving Mode.....	16
Guide to Names and Functions of Components.....	19
Front and Left View.....	19
Front and Right View.....	20
Rear and Left View.....	21
Names and Functions of the Control Panel.....	23
Touch Panel/Interface.....	23
LED Indicators.....	24
Changing the Display Language.....	26
Confirming the Functions that Are Added in RICOH Always Current Technology.....	27
Confirming the Version of RICOH Always Current Technology Implemented on the Machine.....	27
How to Use the Home Screen.....	28
Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips.....	30
How to Use the "Settings".....	33
How to Use the Copy Screen.....	36
How to Use the Copy Screen (Standard).....	36
How to Use the Copy Screen (No Scrolling Screen).....	38
Changing the Layout or Display of the Keys of the Copy Function.....	39
How to Use the Fax Screen.....	41
Customizing the [Send Settings] Screen.....	41
How to Use the Scanner Screen.....	44
Customizing the [Send Settings] Screen.....	44
Adding a Frequently Used Application or Widget to the Home Screen.....	47
Adding an Icon/Widget to the Home Screen.....	48
Moving or Deleting Icons and Widgets.....	48

Creating a Folder to Organize Icons.....	49
Registering Frequently Used Settings as a Program.....	50
Registering Settings as a Program.....	51
Changing the Contents of the Program.....	52
Logging In from the Control Panel.....	54
Logging In by Entering the User Name and Password.....	55
Logging In Using an IC Card.....	56
Logging In Using a Mobile Device.....	56
Authenticating Using the User Code.....	58
Changing the Login Password.....	58
Placing an Original on the Exposure Glass.....	60
Placing an Original in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF).....	62

3. Copy

Basic Procedure for Copying Documents.....	67
Reserving a Copy Job While Executing Another Copy Job.....	70
Interrupting the Current Copy to Copy Another Original.....	71
Making Enlarged or Reduced Copies.....	72
Specifying a Copy Ratio or Size.....	72
Enlarging or Reducing According to the Paper Size.....	74
Reducing Slightly to Increase the Margins.....	75
Duplex Copying.....	77
Combining and Copying a Multi-page Original onto a Single Sheet of Paper.....	79
Copying in Page Order or for Each Page Number.....	82

4. Fax

Basic Procedure for Transmitting Faxes.....	85
Registering Fax Numbers in the Address Book.....	88
Registering a Fax Number and Send Conditions.....	88
Changing/Deleting the Registered Data Such as Fax Number.....	90
Displaying a Preview before Sending a Fax.....	91
Viewing the Transmission Result of Sent Faxes.....	93
Confirming the Information on the Fax Screen.....	93
Checking the Result in Communication Result Report.....	94
Checking the Result in Immediate TX Result Report.....	95

Checking the Result in Communication Failure Report.....	95
Checking the Result in Error Report.....	95
Viewing Memory Storage Report.....	95
Checking by E-mail.....	95
Confirming the Information in Web Image Monitor.....	97

5. Print

Installing the Printer Driver by Using Device Software Manager Installer.....	99
Installing Device Software Manager from the CD-ROM.....	99
Installing Device Software Manager from the Downloaded File.....	102
Installing the Printer Driver for Network Connection (Windows).....	105
Installing the PCL 6 Printer Driver from the CD-ROM.....	105
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver from the CD-ROM.....	108
Installing the PCL 6/PostScript 3 Printer Driver from the Downloaded File.....	110
Installing the Printer Driver for Windows.....	111
If the Machine Cannot Be Found.....	112
Installing the Printer Driver for Network Connection (macOS).....	116
Installing the PPD file.....	116
Registering the Machine in [Printers & Scanners].....	117
Specifying the Option Settings.....	120
Basic Procedure for Printing Documents.....	122
Printing a Document in Windows.....	122
Printing a Document in macOS.....	124
Printing on Both Sides of Paper.....	127
Specifying 2-sided Print (Windows).....	127
Specifying 2-sided Print (macOS).....	127
Combining and Printing Multiple Pages on a Single Sheet of Paper.....	129
Specifying the Combine 2 Originals Function (Windows).....	129
Specifying the Combine 2 Originals Function (macOS).....	129
Printing Documents Stored in the Printer from the Control Panel.....	131
Printing from a USB Flash Memory Device or SD Card Directly.....	133
Printable File Formats.....	133
Printing from a Memory Storage Device or Scan Application.....	134

6. Scan

Scanning Documents and Sending the Scanned Data by E-mail.....	137
Basic Procedure for Sending an E-mail.....	137
Registering the E-mail Destination in the Address Book When Sending an E-mail.....	139
Scanning Documents and Sending the Scanned Data to a Folder.....	142
Confirming the Computer Information (Windows).....	142
Creating a Shared Folder (Windows).....	144
Confirming the Computer Information (macOS).....	147
Creating a Shared Folder (macOS).....	148
Registering the Created Shared Folder in the Address Book.....	149
Basic Procedure for Performing Send to Folder.....	151
Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density.....	153
Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document.....	156
Notes about and limitations of file types.....	158

7. Document Server

Storing Documents in Document Server.....	159
Printing Documents in Document Server.....	161
Printing a Document with the Settings Specified When Scanned.....	161
Changing the Print Settings to Print a Document.....	162
Specifying a Page to Print.....	163

8. Web Image Monitor

Using Web Image Monitor.....	165
What You Can Do on the Web Image Monitor.....	166
Web Image Monitor Screen.....	168
Specifying Web Image Monitor Help.....	168

9. Adding Paper and Toner

Loading Paper into the Paper Tray.....	171
Fanning the Paper.....	172
Loading Paper into Tray 1.....	173
Loading Paper into the A3/11 × 17 Tray Unit.....	175
Loading Paper into Trays 2 and 3.....	176
Loading Tab Stock into Trays 2 and 3.....	179
Loading Paper into the Bypass Tray.....	180

Loading Paper into the Large Capacity Tray (LCT).....	182
Loading Paper into the Interposer.....	183
Specifying the Paper Size That Is Not Automatically Detected.....	185
Specifying a Custom Size Paper Using the Control Panel.....	186
Specifying Paper Type and Thickness Settings.....	187
Recommended Paper Sizes and Types.....	190
Tray 1	190
Tray 1 (A3/11 × 17 tray unit).....	190
Trays 2 and 3.....	191
Bypass Tray.....	192
Large Capacity Tray.....	194
Extension Unit (for LCT).....	195
Interposer.....	196
Notes on Special Paper.....	196
Paper Thickness for Each Paper Weight.....	197
Unusable Paper.....	197
Paper Storage.....	198
Saving Printouts.....	198
Thick Paper Orientation and Recommended Status.....	200
Loading Orientation-fixed Paper or Two-sided Paper.....	202
Copying onto Letterhead Paper.....	202
Printing onto Letterhead Paper Using the Printer Driver.....	203
Recommended Original Size and Weight.....	204
Replacing the Toner.....	206
Precautions When Storing Toner.....	207
Precautions When Replacing the Toner.....	207
Disposing Exhausted Toners.....	208
Replenishing the Staples.....	210
Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle.....	211
Precautions When Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle.....	211
Disposing the Used Waste Toner Bottle.....	213
10. Troubleshooting	
Alert Sounds.....	215

Checking the Indicators, Icons, and Messages on the Control Panel.....	217
When an Icon Is Displayed with a Message.....	217
When the [Check Status] Indicator Is Lit or Flashing.....	219
When the Machine Cannot Be Operated.....	221
When the Machine Does Not Respond Correctly to an Operation on the Control Panel.....	221
When the Machine Does Not Respond Correctly to an Operation from a Computer.....	225
When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated.....	227
When a Message Appears While Using the Copy Function.....	230
Messages Displayed When the Connect Copy Function Is Unavailable.....	231
When a Message Appears While Using Document Server.....	233
When a Message Appears While Using the Fax Function.....	235
Messages that Appear During Operation or When Sending/Receiving a Fax Cannot Be Performed....	235
Messages that Appear When the Machine Cannot Connect to the Network.....	236
Messages Displayed When the Remote Fax Function Is Unavailable.....	245
When a Message Appears While Using the Printer Function.....	249
Messages that Appear without Error Codes.....	249
Messages that Appear with Error Codes.....	261
When a Message Appears While Using the Scanner Function.....	265
Messages that Appear on the Control Panel.....	265
Messages that Appear on the Computer.....	272
When Other Messages Appear.....	278
Messages that Appear When Machine Login Fails.....	280
Messages that Appear When Logging in to the Machine Using an IC Card Fails.....	288
Messages that Appear When the LDAP Server Is Unavailable.....	289
Messages that Appear When There Is a Problem with the Certificate.....	290
Messages that Appear When an Application Site Cannot Be Used.....	291

11. Specifications for The Machine

Model-Specific Information.....	293
List of Specifications for Standard Functions.....	295
Specifications for the Main Unit.....	295
Specifications for the Document Server.....	302
Specifications for Facsimile.....	303

Specifications for Printer.....	308
Specifications for Scanner.....	310
Specifications for Auto Document Feeder.....	314
Specifications for Finisher SR4140.....	315
Specifications for Finisher SR4150.....	319
Specifications for Booklet Finisher SR4160.....	321
Specifications for Copy Tray.....	324
Specifications for Shift Tray (Shift Sort Tray SH4020).....	325
Specifications for Punch Unit (Finisher SR4140).....	326
Specifications for Punch Unit (Finisher SR4150, Booklet Finisher SR4160).....	327
Specifications for Interposer.....	328
Specifications for Mailbox.....	328
Specifications for Multi-Folding Unit FD4010.....	329
Specifications for Multi-Folding Unit FD4020.....	330
Specifications for Output Jogger.....	331
Specifications for Large Capacity Tray (LCT).....	331
Specifications for IEEE 1284 Interface Board.....	332
Specifications for Wireless LAN Board.....	332
Specifications for Device Server Option.....	333
The Setting Values of the Transmission Function.....	334
Send Email.....	334
Send to Folder.....	335
Broadcast Transmission.....	336
Printable Area and Margin.....	337
Machine Options.....	338
Guide to Functions of the Machine's External Options.....	338
Guide to Functions of the Machine's Internal Options.....	343
Special Notes When Using External Options.....	345
Precautions for Using the Finisher.....	345
Removing Prints from Finisher SR4140 during Printing.....	346
Removing Prints from Finisher SR4150/Booklet Finisher SR4160 during Printing.....	346
When Using the Z-fold Function with Multi-Folding Unit FD4020.....	347
Functions Requiring Optional Configurations.....	351

Copy Function.....	351
Facsimile Functions.....	352
Printer Function.....	353
Scanner Function.....	354
Interface.....	355
Function Compatibility.....	356

12. Legal and Contact Information

Environmental Regulations.....	359
ENERGY STAR Program  Region B (mainly North America).....	359
Energy Saving Functions.....	359
User Information on Electrical and Electronic Equipment  Region A (mainly Europe).....	360
Note for the Battery and/or Accumulator Symbol (For EU countries only)  Region A (mainly Europe)	361
Environmental Advice for Users  Region A (mainly Europe).....	362
Notes to users in the state of California (Notes to Users in USA)  Region B (mainly North America)....	363
Copyright Information about Installed Software.....	364
Trademarks (User Guide).....	365



1. About This Manual

Abbreviated Names of Options

1

In the manuals, the abbreviated names of options are used. The abbreviated names and corresponding product names are as follows:

Abbreviated names of externally attached options

Abbreviated name	Product name
ADF handle	ADF Handle TypeC
ADF double-feed detection kit	Page Keeper Type M37
Small size paper unit	Small Paper Feeding Unit Type M37
Large capacity tray (LCT)	LCIT RT4080
Extension unit of LCT	8 ¹ / ₂ " × 14" PAPER SIZE TRAY TYPE 9002
Copy tray	Copy Tray Type 9002
Shift tray	Shift Sort Tray SH4020
Multi-Folding unit FD4010	Multi-Folding unit FD4010
Multi-Folding unit FD4020	Multi-Folding unit FD4020
Interposer	Cover Interposer Tray CI4040
Output jogger	Output Jogger Unit Type M25
Finisher SR4140	Finisher SR4140
Finisher SR4150	Finisher SR4150
Booklet Finisher SR4160	Booklet Finisher SR4160
 Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) Punch unit	Punch Unit PU3090 EU
	Punch Unit PU3090 SC
	Punch Unit PU 5050 EU
	Punch Unit PU 5050 SC

Abbreviated name	Product name
 Region B (mainly North America)	Punch Unit PU3090 NA
Punch unit	Punch Unit PU 5050 NA
Mailbox	Mail Box CS4010
A3/11 × 17 tray unit	A3/11"×17" Tray Type M44
Tab sheet holder	Tab Sheet Holder Type 9002
Copy connector	Copy Connector Type M25
Card reader	NFC Card Reader Type M42
Smart card reader	SMART CARD READER BUILT-IN UNIT TYPE M19
External keyboard bracket	External Keyboard Bracket Type M25

Abbreviated names of internal options

Abbreviated name	Product name
Fax unit	Fax Option Type M44
Extra G3 interface unit	G3 Interface Unit Type M44
Expansion Memory	FAX Memory Unit Type M25 64MB
PostScript 3 unit	PostScript3 Unit Type M44
OCR unit	OCR Unit Type M13
IPDS unit	IPDS Unit Type M44
IEEE 1284 interface board	IEEE 1284 Interface Board Type M19
Wireless LAN board	IEEE 802.11a/g/n Interface Unit Type M19
File format converter	File Format Converter Type M19
 Region A (mainly Europe)  Region B (mainly North America) Enhanced Security HDD	ENHANCED SECURITY HDD OPTION TYPE M10
Fax connection unit	Fax Connection Unit Type M44

Abbreviated name	Product name
VM card	VM CARD Type M37
Device server option	Device Server Option Type M37
 Region A (mainly Asia)  Region B (mainly North America) XPS card	XPS Direct Print Option Type M44
Data overwrite security unit	DataOverwriteSecurity Unit Type M19

2. Getting Started

Turning On and Off the Power

To turn the machine on and off, press the main power switch on the left side of the machine.

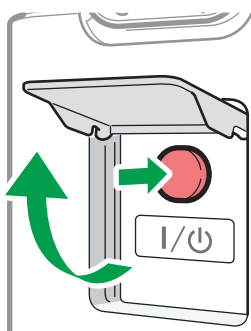
★ Important

- When you are using the fax function on the machine, do not turn the power off under normal operation. If the power is turned off, data stored in the fax memory will be lost in about one hour after the machine is turned off. If you have to turn the power off or unplug the power cord for some reason, make sure 100% is shown as available memory on the screen for the fax function.
- Confirm how much power the options draw, and then plug them into an outlet that is nearby but separate from the outlet that the main machine is plugged into.

Turning On the Main Power

★ Important

- Do not press the main power switch soon after you press the main power of the machine. When you turn the power on or off, wait at least 10 seconds after confirming that the main power indicator on the control panel has turned on or off.
1. Make sure the power cord is firmly plugged into the wall outlet.
 2. Open the cover of the main power switch on the front left side of the machine, and push the switch.



D0CZIM0080

The main power indicator on the right side of the control panel turns on.

↓ Note

- When the power is turned on, the screen may show that the machine is performing an auto restart. Do not turn off the main power while the machine is processing. It takes about 4 minutes until the machine restarts.

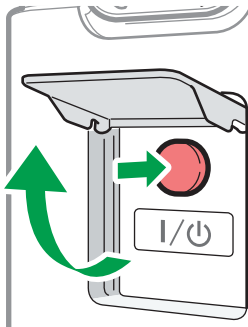
- If a file was deleted from memory, a Power Failure report is automatically printed as soon as the power is restored. This report can be used to identify lost files.

Turning Off the Main Power

★ Important

- Do not turn off the power while the machine is in operation. To turn the power off, confirm that the operation is finished.
- Do not hold down the main power switch while turning off the main power. Doing so forcibly turns off the machine's power and may damage the hard disk or memory and cause malfunctions.
- Do not press the main power switch soon after pressing the main power switch on the machine. When you turn the power on or off, wait at least 10 seconds after confirming that the main power indicator on the control panel has turned on or off.
- The fan inside the machine near the vents may continue running to cool the machine after a large print job. While the fan is running, do not turn off the main power nor disconnect the power cord from the wall outlet.

1. Open the cover of the main power switch on the front left side of the machine, and push the switch.



DOCZIM0080

The main power indicator on the right side of the control panel turns off. The main power turns off automatically after the machine has shut down properly.

Energy Saving Mode

When the machine is not operated for a specified period of time, the machine enters the "Energy Saving mode" automatically. There are the following two steps of Energy Saving mode:

1. Low Power Mode
2. Sleep Mode

By default, the machine first switches to Low Power mode and then to Sleep mode after a lapse of time.

Low Power Mode

In this mode, the control panel display turns off and the main power indicator remains lit. If the machine is left idle for a specific time, it switches to Low Power mode.

- You can change the amount of time that the machine waits before switching to Low Power mode under [Low Power Mode Timer].

See "Date/Time/Timer", User Guide (Full Version).

- If you touch the control panel in Low Power mode, the machine exits the mode and the control panel display turns on.

Sleep Mode

In this mode, the display of the control panel turns off and the main power indicator blinks slowly. Power consumption is minimized. When you do not operate the machine for a specified period of time or press [Energy Save] (⏻), the machine enters Sleep mode.

- You can specify the amount of time that the machine waits before entering Sleep mode under [Sleep Mode Timer].

See "Date/Time/Timer", User Guide (Full Version).

- The machine recovers from Sleep mode when you perform one of the following:
 - Lift the ADF.
 - Place an original in the ADF.
 - Touch the display of the control panel.
 - Approach the machine and are detected by the human detection sensor.

See "Recovering from Sleep Mode When a Person Approaches the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

Note

- The energy saving functions are disabled when an error occurs or while an operation is in progress.
- When the machine recovers from Sleep mode using the human detection sensor, the main power indicator turns on. Even if Sleep mode is canceled, the operation screen is not displayed until you touch the touch panel.
- The energy saving functions will not operate in the following cases:
 - When fixed warm-up is in progress
 - When operations are suspended during printing
 - When a warning message appears
 - When paper is jammed
 - When the Data In indicator is lit or flashing
- The machine does not enter Sleep mode in the following cases:

- During communication with external equipment
- When the hard disk is active
- When the service call message appears
- When the ADF, machine's cover, or ADF cover are opened
- When the "Add Toner" message appears
- When toner is being replenished
- When one of the following screens is displayed:
 - System Settings
 - Counter
 - Inquiry
 - Address Book
 - Tray/Paper Settings
- When data is being processed
- If a file is waiting to be transmitted within the next minute using the "Send Later" facsimile function
- When a recipient is being registered in the address list or group dial list
- When the sample print, locked print, hold print, or stored print screen is displayed
- When the screen of a document that was stored under the printer function appears
- When the internal cooling fan is active
- When accessing the machine using Web Image Monitor

Guide to Names and Functions of Components

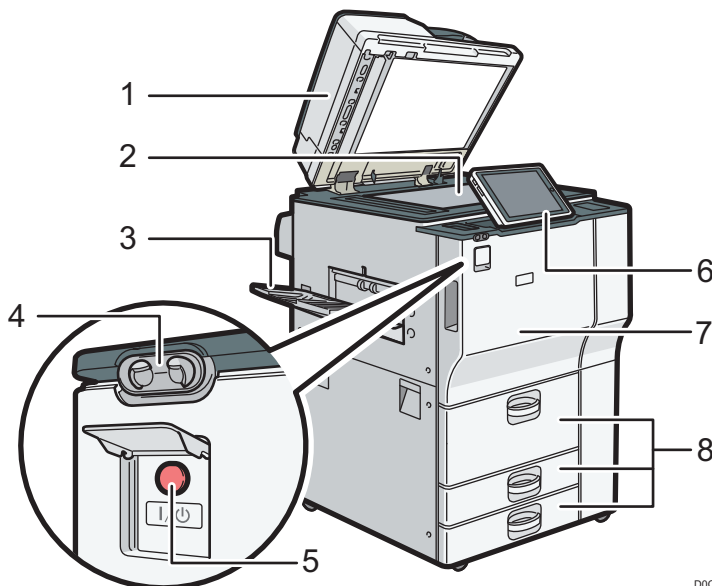
CAUTION

- Do not obstruct the machine's vents. Doing so can result in fire as the internal components are overheated.

ADF stands for Auto Document Feeder.

2

Front and Left View



DOCZIM1301

1. Auto Document Feeder (ADF)

Lower the ADF over originals placed on the exposure glass.

If you load a stack of originals in the ADF, the ADF will automatically feed the originals one by one.

The ADF scans both sides of an original simultaneously.

page 62 "Placing an Original in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF)"

2. Exposure glass

Place originals face down here.

page 60 "Placing an Original on the Exposure Glass"

3. Copy tray

Copied/printed paper and fax messages are delivered here.

4. Human detection sensor

Detects a person approaching the machine.

See "Recovering from Sleep Mode When a Person Approaches the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

5. Main power switch

To turn the power on and off, open the cover of the main power switch and press the main power switch.

page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"

6. Control panel

page 23 "Names and Functions of the Control Panel"

7. Front cover

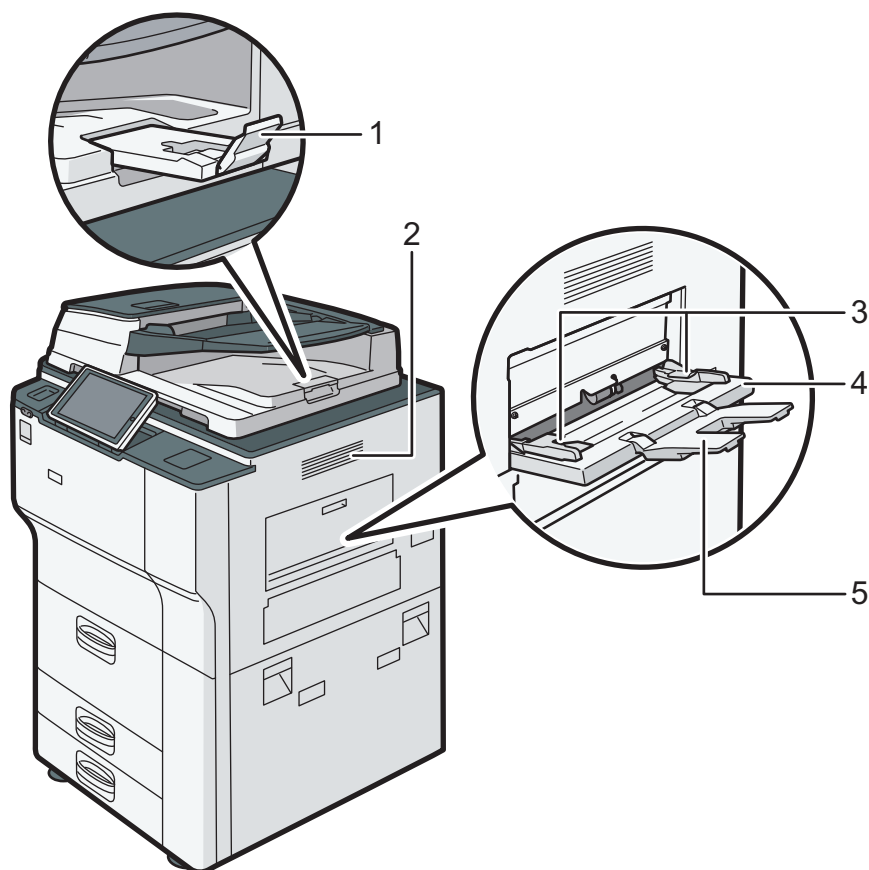
Open to replace the toner cartridge.

8. Paper trays (Trays 1–3)

Load paper here. Tray 1 is a tandem tray where paper on the left side automatically moves to the right when paper there has run out.

page 171 "Loading Paper into the Paper Tray"

Front and Right View



DOCZIM1302

1. ADF's extender

Pull this extender to support large paper.

2. Vents

Prevent overheating.

After large-volume printing, the ventilation fan may continue to work to lower the temperature inside the machine.

3. Paper guides

When loading paper in the bypass tray, align the paper guides flush against the paper.

4. Bypass tray

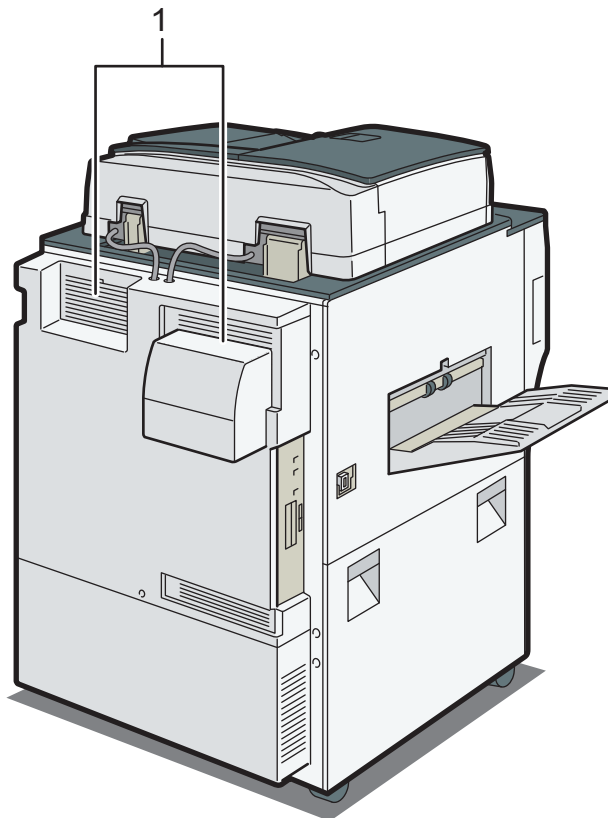
Use to copy or print on adhesive labels, translucent paper, and paper that cannot be loaded in the paper trays.

page 180 "Loading Paper into the Bypass Tray"

5. Extender

Pull this extender out when loading paper in the bypass tray.

Rear and Left View



D0CZIM1319

1. Vents

Prevent overheating.

After large-volume printing, the ventilation fan may continue to work to lower the temperature inside the machine.

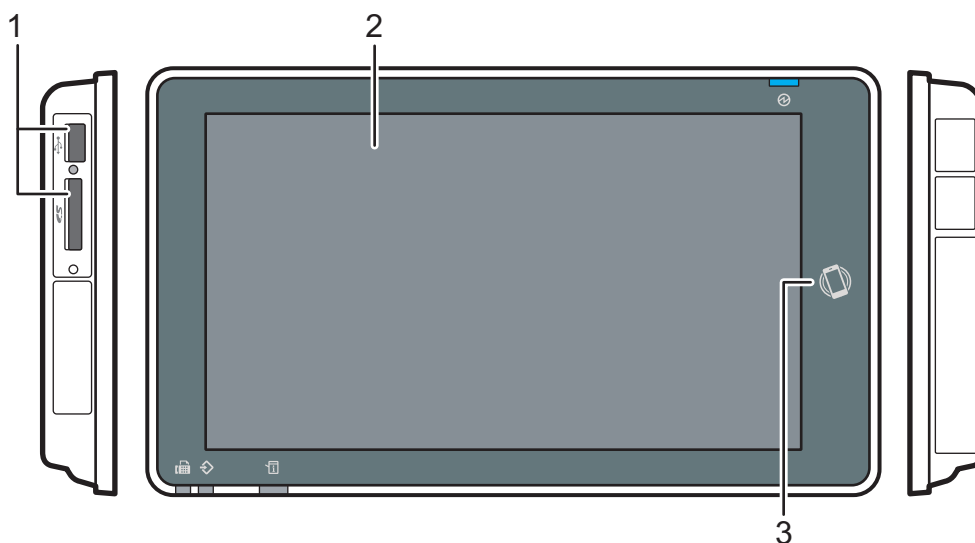
Names and Functions of the Control Panel

The touch panel (Smart Operation Panel) that displays the operation screen of the machine is referred to as the "Control Panel".

- On both sides of the control panel, interfaces for connecting external devices and slots to insert an SD card/USB flash memory device are provided.
- Even when the screen is turned off, the LED indicators on the frame of the control panel show the status of the machine.

2

Touch Panel/Interface

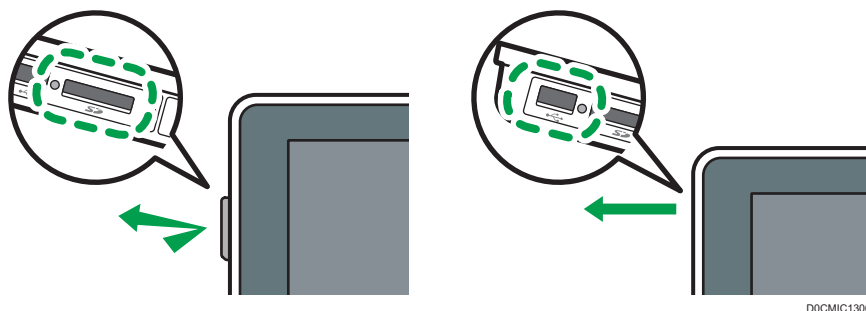


DOCIMC1309

1. Media slots

Insert an SD card or USB flash memory device. You can store the scanned data or print the file stored on the media.

- Use an SD memory card or SDHC memory card with a maximum capacity of 32 GB. You cannot use an SDXC memory card.
- Use the media formatted in FAT16 or FAT32.
- Certain types of USB flash memory devices cannot be used in the machine.
- A USB extension cable, hub, or card reader cannot be used.
- If the power of the machine is turned off or the media is removed from the machine while the machine is reading the data in the media, check the data in the media.
- Before removing the media from the slot, press the icon displayed on the screen ( / ) to cancel the connection.



D0CMIC1306

2. Touch Panel

Displays the Home screen, operation screen of applications, and messages. Operate with the fingertips.

page 28 "How to Use the Home Screen"

page 30 "Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips"

3. NFC tag

Used to connect the machine and a smart device with the RICOH Smart Device Connector.

See "Using the Machine Functions from a Mobile Device", User Guide (Full Version).

page 56 "Logging In Using a Mobile Device"

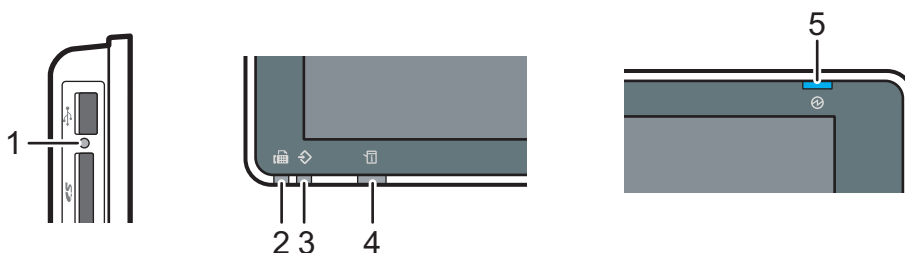
Note

- You can adjust the angle of the control panel to improve visibility.



D0CZIM0081

LED Indicators



D0CMIC1310

1. Media access indicator

Flashes when data is being read from or written to an SD card.

While the machine is accessing the SD card or USB flash memory device, do not turn the power off or remove the media.

- If the media access lamp does not light when an SD card is pushed into the media slot, do the following:
 - Reinsert the SD card.
 - The SD card may be broken. Contact the shop where you bought it.

2. Fax indicator

Indicates the status of the fax function.

- Flashing: transmitting and receiving data
- Lit: receiving data (Substitute RX File/Memory Lock Reception/Personal Box)

3. Data In indicator

Flashes when the machine is receiving data sent from the printer driver or LAN-Fax driver.

4. Status indicator

Indicates the status of the system. Stays lit when an error occurs or toner runs out.

page 217 "Checking the Indicators, Icons, and Messages on the Control Panel"

5. Main power indicator

The main power indicator lights up when you turn on the main power switch. In Sleep mode, it flickers slowly.

Changing the Display Language

You can change the language used on the display. English is set as default.

1. On the Home screen, press the change language widget.



2. Select the language you want to display.

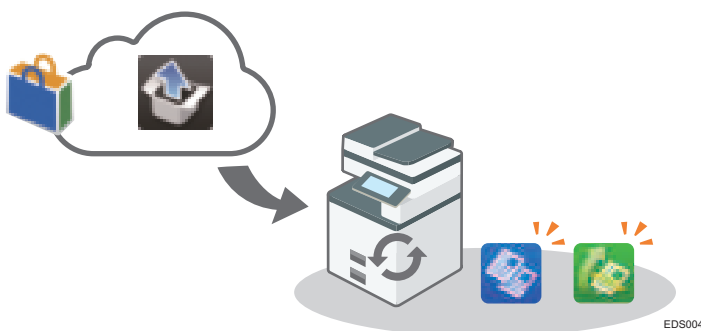


3. Press [OK].

Confirming the Functions that Are Added in RICOH Always Current Technology

You can install the upgrade package for the machine's functions by RICOH Always Current Technology. You can apply the latest functions developed after purchase and security updates.

To install the latest version of RICOH Always Current Technology, access the Application Site from the control panel of the machine.



Note

- For details about installing RICOH Always Current Technology, see the Operating Instructions for Application Site.

Confirming the Version of RICOH Always Current Technology Implemented on the Machine

1. Press [Maintnc./Inquiry/Mach. Info] on the [Check Status] screen.
2. Press [Inquiry].
3. Check the version of the machine under the machine information.

How to Use the Home Screen

Press [Home] (🏠) at the bottom center of the screen to display the Home screen on which icons for each function are shown. On the Home screen, you can register frequently used shortcuts and widgets.

★ Important

2

- Do not apply strong impact or force to the screen, or it may be damaged. Maximum force allowable is approx. 30N (approx. 3 kgf). (N = Newton, kgf = Kilogram force. 1 kgf = 9.8N.)
- Touch the Home screen to operate it.
page 30 "Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips"
- You can add or delete icons and widgets, and change their order.
page 47 "Adding a Frequently Used Application or Widget to the Home Screen"



DOCZPM1340

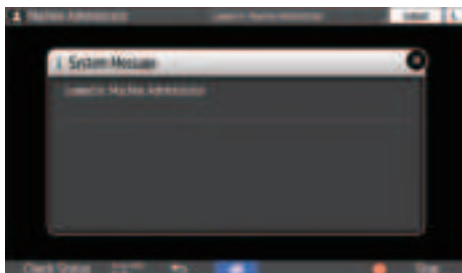
1. Login icon

This icon is displayed when users are logged in. When you press the icon, the names of the users who are currently logged in are displayed.

2. System Message

Displays system and application messages. If there are two or more messages, they will be displayed alternately.

If a message indicating that the toner has run out or an error has occurred is displayed, press the message to display the system message list to check the contents.



3. Help

When the machine is connected to the Internet and Help is available for the screen that is displayed or the error that has occurred, press this icon to display a Help screen.

Specify [Cookie] in the control panel browser to [ON] to display Help properly.

4. [Login]/[Logout]

These keys are displayed when user authentication or administrator authentication is enabled. Press the keys to log in to or log out from the machine.

page 54 "Logging In from the Control Panel"

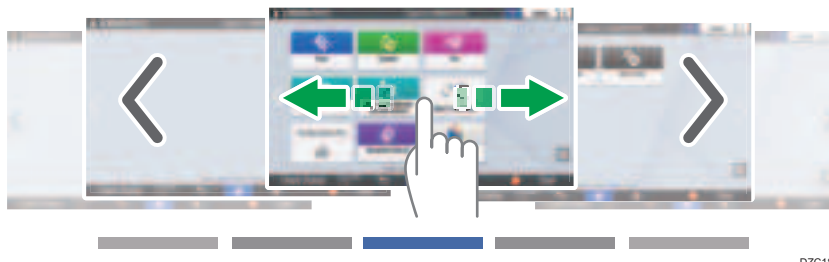
5. [Energy Save]

Press to enter or exit Sleep mode.

page 16 "Energy Saving Mode"

6. Switch Screens

Press to scroll the screens right and left. The Home screen has 5 screens.



You can switch between the screens by flicking.

page 30 "Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips"

You can hide the screen with no icons by setting [Home Screen Blank Pages] to [Do not Display Blank Pages].

See "Display/Input", User Guide (Full Version).

7. Application list

Press to display applications that are not displayed on the Home screen.

page 47 "Adding a Frequently Used Application or Widget to the Home Screen"

8. Current display position

Shows which of the five screens is currently displayed.

9. [Stop]

Press to stop scanning or printing.

You can change the setting to stop only a job in progress with [Stop Key to Suspend Print Job].

See "Others", User Guide (Full Version).

10. [Menu]

Displayed if a menu is available in the currently selected application.

On the Home screen, press to restore the icons to their factory default positions.

11. [Home]

Press to display the Home screen.

12. [Back]

Press to return to the previous screen.

13. Date/Time and Toner remaining

The current date and time is displayed.

To display the information about Toner remaining, specify [Display Time/Remaining Toner] of [System Bar Settings] to [Remaining Toner].

See "Display/Input", User Guide (Full Version).

14. [Check Status]

Press to check the following system statuses of the machine. This lights up in red when an error occurs.

- Machine's status
Indicates the error status and network status.
- Operational status of each function
Status of functions such as Copy or Scanner
- Current jobs
- Job history
- Machine's maintenance information

See "Checking the Machine Status from the Control Panel", User Guide (Full Version).

15. Icon display area

Displays the icons and widgets.

Note

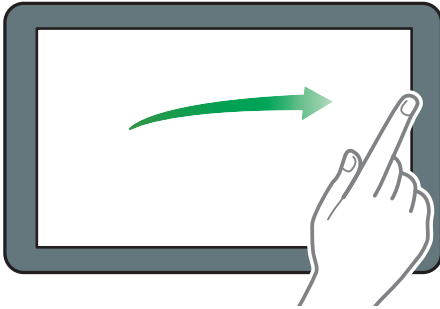
- You can change the screen displayed when the power is turned on under [Function Priority].
- See "Displaying Frequently Used Functions on the First Screen", User Guide (Full Version).
- When you press [Menu]  ► [Reset Home Screen] with the Embedded Software Architecture application being installed in the machine, the application icons are not deleted.

Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips

On the Home screen or application screen, you can perform the following operations by touching the screen with your fingertips.

Flick (for switching between screens)

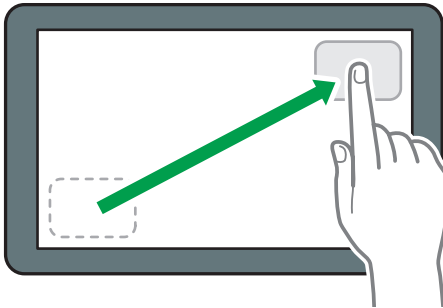
Touch and slide your finger on the screen quickly left or right to switch between the screens.



DZB181

Drag (for moving an icon)

Press and hold an icon, and then slide your finger while pressing on the screen to move the icon.

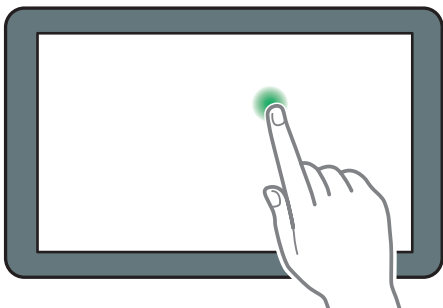


DZB182

Long tap (for displaying the available menu screen)

Press and hold on a blank area on the screen to display the menu screen.

On the Home screen you can add a folder or change the wallpaper from the menu.

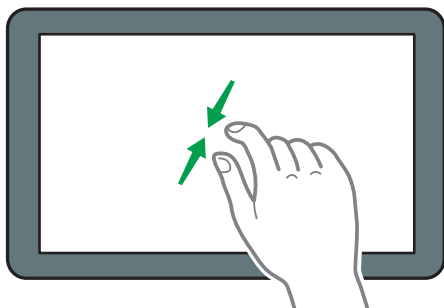


DZB183

In some applications, you can also use the following actions to operate the screen:

Pinch-in (for zooming out the screen)

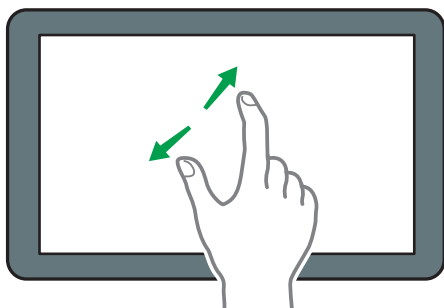
Touch the screen with your thumb and forefinger, and pinch them together. This feature is useful when previewing files and images.



DZB185

Pinch-out (for zooming in the screen)

Touch the screen with your thumb and forefinger, and spread them apart. You can also zoom in the screen by tapping the screen twice quickly. When you quickly tap the screen twice again, the screen returns to full display. This feature is useful when previewing files and images.



DZB184

How to Use the "Settings"

Press [Settings] on the Home screen to change the settings of the machine, edit the address book, or confirm various information.

The "Settings" screen consists of the menus shown below.



EDN006

1. System Settings

Specify the operation panel display, machine operation settings, operation sounds, timer, network settings and other settings.

See "System Settings Items", User Guide (Full Version).

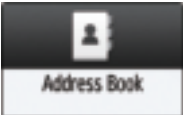
2. Address Book



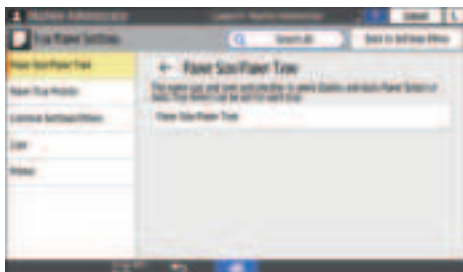
Manage the destination for sending data from the fax or scanner or the authentication information for logging in to the machine.

See "How to Use the Address Book", User Guide (Full Version).

You can start operation by pressing [Address Book] on the Home screen.



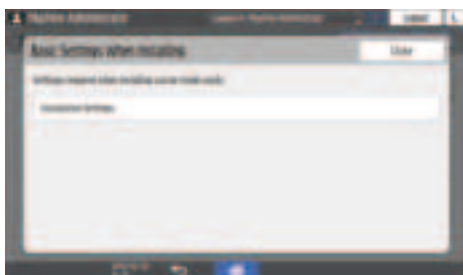
3. Tray/Paper Settings



Specify the size and type of paper set in the paper tray.

See "Tray/Paper Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Basic Settings When Installing



You can configure the settings easily when installing the machine.

- On the "Settings" screen, you can specify the settings for the items shown below in Wizard format when the machine is moved to a different location or the environment in which the machine is used changes.
 - Basic Settings
 - Network Settings
 - Fax Settings
- On the "Scan to Folder Helper", you can easily specify the destination to send the scanned data to a computer.

5. Application Settings

Change the settings for the Copier, Document Server, Fax, Printer, and Scanner functions.

See "Copier/Document Server Settings Items", "Fax Settings Items", "Printer Settings Items", and "Scanner Settings Items", User Guide (Full Version).

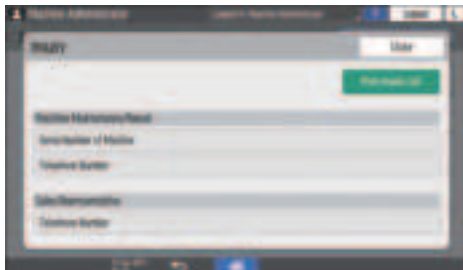
6. Search All

You can search for a setting item by entering a keyword. Enter more than one keyword to narrow down the search results.

7. Change Language

You can change the language displayed on the control panel.

8. Inquiry

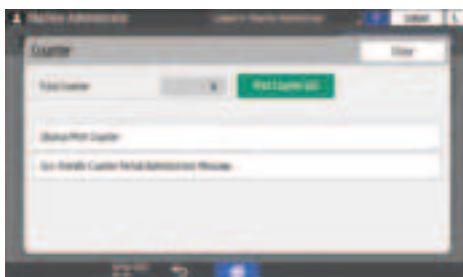


Confirm the contact for requesting repair of the machine or ordering consumables.

9. Maintenance

You can perform color calibration and color registration.

10. Counter



Display and print the total number of sheets printed for each function.

See "Checking the Counter of the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

↓ Note

- If administrator authentication has been set, contact the administrator to change the settings.
- When you are finished performing an operation, press [Home] (🏠) to return to the normal screen.

How to Use the Copy Screen

You can select from one of two types for the Copy screen:

Standard View

The basic functions that are used frequently are displayed with big keys. Scroll down the screen to see the keys used to configure the functions for finishing or editing.



DOCZPM1303

Full View

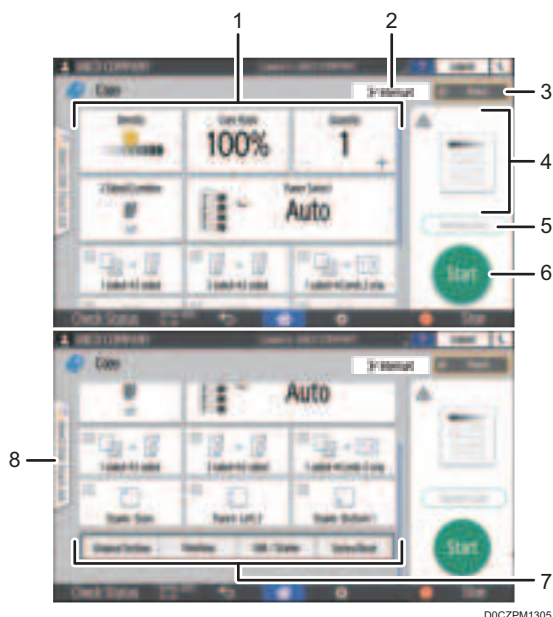
You can see all the function keys on a single screen. You do not need to scroll through the screens to select a function.



- To switch the screen type, press [Menu] (⚙️) ► [Screen Settings] ► [Switch Screen Type] on the Copy screen.
- You can use the same functions on either screen.
- When the administrator has configured user authentication and User's Own Customization is enabled, each login user can change the screen type.

How to Use the Copy Screen (Standard)

You can customize the layout and how the keys are displayed on the Copy screen in Standard. For details, see page 39 "Changing the Layout or Display of the Keys of the Copy Function".



1. Copy function keys

Press a key to select the function to assign to the key. Flick up and down on the screen to display the keys out of the visible area. The keys with assigned functions are displayed in yellow or with  in the upper left corner. Depending on the assigned function, the display of the key changes according to the specified setting.

2. [Interrupt]

Interrupt a copy job in progress to copy a different original.

3. [Reset]

Reset the settings configured on the Copy screen.

4. Preview of the current setting status

Displays an image representing the settings configured on the Copy screen. Press the image to display the list of the settings.



5. [Sample Copy]

Press to make a partial copy as a test before proceeding to copy the rest of the original.

See "Making a Partial Copy as a Test and Copying the Rest of the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

6. [Start]

Press to perform copying.

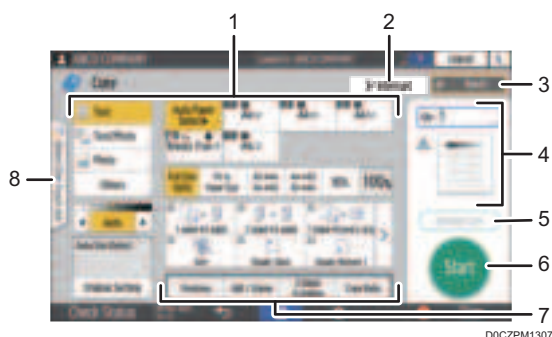
7. Other keys for Copy function

Press to select the functions whose keys are out of the visible area of the screen. The key of the function that is currently configured is displayed with  in the upper left corner.

8. Select One Touch Job

You can see the preset settings in the machine or the job history. When user authentication is configured, display the history of the executed jobs for each login user. When selecting a job history, its settings are displayed on the current Copy screen. You can use the same settings as a previous job by selecting the job history.

How to Use the Copy Screen (No Scrolling Screen)

**1. Copy function keys**

Press a key to select the function to assign to the key. The keys with assigned functions are displayed in yellow. To see the display area in the illustration below, press  or flick to the left or right.

**2. [Interrupt]**

Interrupt a copy job in progress to copy a different original.

3. [Reset]

Reset the settings configured on the Copy screen.

4. Preview of the current setting status

Displays an image representing the quantity and the settings configured on the Copy screen. Press [Qty] to display the number keys. Press the image to display the list of the settings.

5. [Sample Copy]

Press to make a partial copy as a test before proceeding to copy the rest of the original.

See "Making a Partial Copy as a Test and Copying the Rest of the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

6. [Start]

Press to perform copying.

7. Other keys for Copy function

Press to select the functions whose keys are out of the visible area of the screen. The key of the function that is currently configured is displayed with  in the upper left corner.

8. Select One Touch Job

You can see the preset settings in the machine or the job history. When user authentication is configured, display the history of the executed jobs for each authenticated user. When selecting a job history, its settings are displayed on the current Copy screen. You can use the same settings as a previous job by selecting the job history.

2

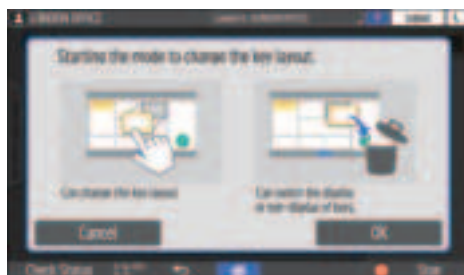
Changing the Layout or Display of the Keys of the Copy Function

You can customize the layout and how the Copy function keys are displayed on the Copy screen in Standard mode (Arranging keys mode).

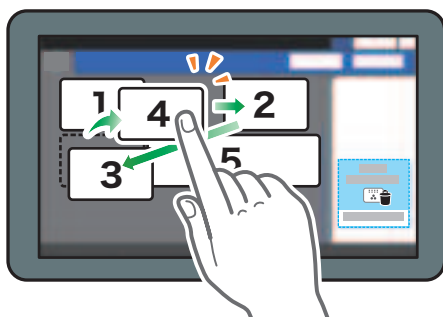
When the administrator has configured user authentication and User's Own Customization is enabled, each login user can customize the layout.

Switching to change the key layout mode

On the Copy screen, press and hold one of the keys until the screen changes, and then press [OK] to display the screen of the arranging keys mode.

**Changing the key layout**

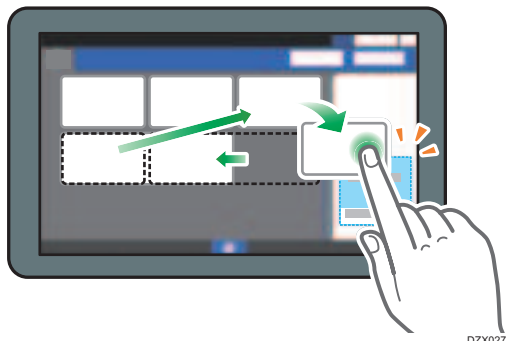
Press and hold the key to move, drag it to the location to display, and then press [OK].



D0CMIC1355

Hiding a key

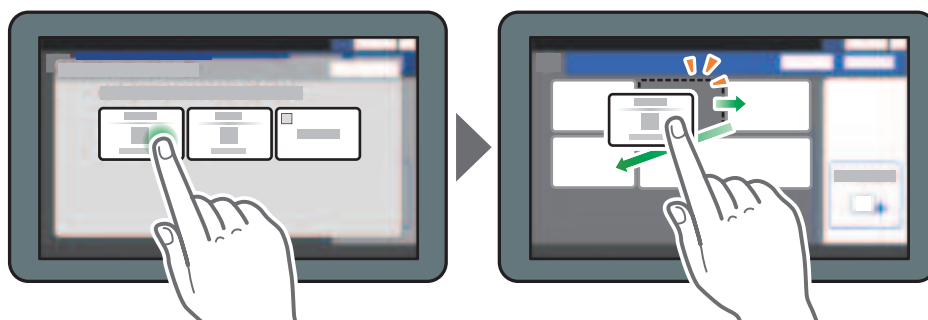
Press and hold the key to hide, drag it to "Hide the Keys", and then press [OK].



DZX027

Displaying a hidden key

Press "Hidden Key List" to display the hidden keys. Press and hold the key to display, drag it to the location to display, and then press [OK].



DZX028

Confirming the initial placement of the keys

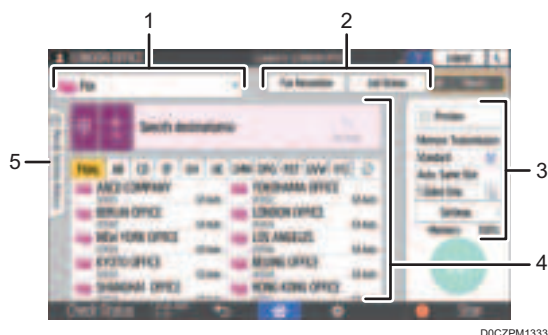
Press [Menu] (⚙️) ► [Screen Settings] ► [Temporarily Restore Initial Key Layout] on the Copy screen. After confirming, press [Back].

Resetting the key layout to the default

Press [Menu] (⚙️) ► [Screen Settings] ► [Restore Initial Key Layout] ► [Yes] on the Copy screen.

How to Use the Fax Screen

There are five kinds of functions and settings on the Fax screen.



2

1. Destination type selection

Switch the destination type between [Fax] (including IP-Fax) and [Internet Fax]. The items displayed in the address book and destination entry screen for manual entry change also when you switch the destination type.

2. Transmission/reception information confirmation

Browse and print the received documents that are stored in the memory or on the hard disk drive of the machine. You can also browse and print the transmission and reception history.

3. Transmission settings

You can specify the additional features to use when sending a fax, configure the scan settings appropriately for the original to scan, and display a preview before sending the fax. You can also check the settings that are currently specified and the remaining amount of memory.

4. Destination specification

You can select an address registered in the address book through one-touch operation. Press  to specify a destination by using various other methods such as by entering manually or selecting from the history. You can also register a new destination in the address book.

5. Job history

Job history of the executed jobs is displayed. When user authentication is set, the job history of each authenticated user is displayed. When you select a job history, the setting will be applied on the current Fax screen. This feature is convenient when you are using the same setting repeatedly.

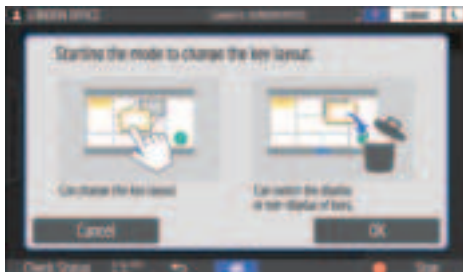
Customizing the [Send Settings] Screen

Press and hold a key on the [Send Settings] screen to customize the layout of the keys.

When the administrator has enabled user authentication and User's Own Customization, the screen can be customized for each user.

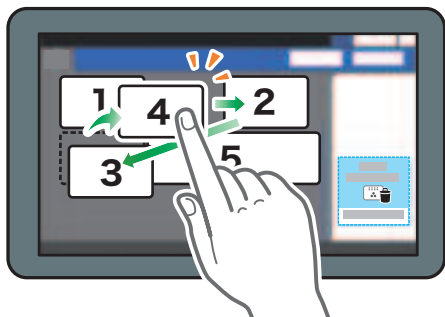
Switching to change the key layout mode

Long-press any key and press [OK] on the screen below to switch to the key sorting mode and enable changing of the key layout.



Changing the key layout

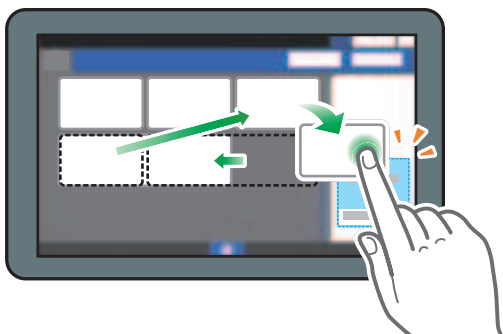
Long-press a key to change the layout, drag it to a new location, and then press [OK].



DOCMIC1355

Hiding a key

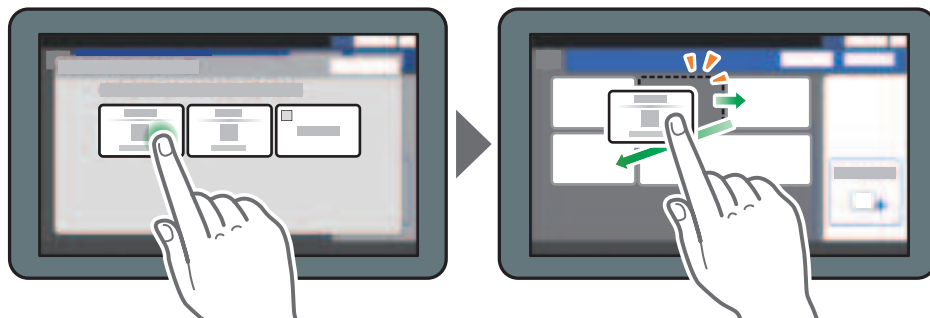
Long-press a key to hide, drag it to [Hide the Keys] (Trash icon), and then press [OK].



DZX027

Displaying a hidden key

Press "Hidden Key List" to display the hidden keys. Press and hold the key to display, drag it to the location to display, and then press [OK].



DZX028

2

Confirming the initial placement of the keys

Press [Menu] (⚙️) ► [Change Key Layout] ► [Check the key layout of the factory defaults] on the Fax screen. After confirming, press [Back].

Resetting the key layout to the default

Press [Menu] (⚙️) ► [Change Key Layout] ► [Reset Layout] ► [Restore] on the Fax screen.

How to Use the Scanner Screen

There are five kinds of functions and settings on the Scanner screen.



D0CZPM1334

1. Destination type selection

You can switch between [Scan to Email] and [Scan to Folder]. The items displayed in the address book and destination entry screen for manual entry also change when you switch the destination type.

2. Scan Files Status

You can browse the transmission history of the sent documents and cancel sending of a document waiting in the queue. The transmission file status may not be displayed depending on the security settings.

3. Transmission settings

You can specify the scan settings according to the type of document to scan and the purpose of the scanned data, and display a preview before sending the data.

4. Destination specification

You can select a destination registered in the address book through one-touch operation. Press  to specify a destination by using various other methods such as by entering manually or selecting from the history. You can also register a new destination in the address book.

5. Select One Touch Job

You can see the preset settings in the machine or the job history. When user authentication is set, the job history of each authenticated user is displayed. When you select a job history, the setting will be applied on the current Scanner screen. This feature is convenient when you are using the same setting repeatedly.

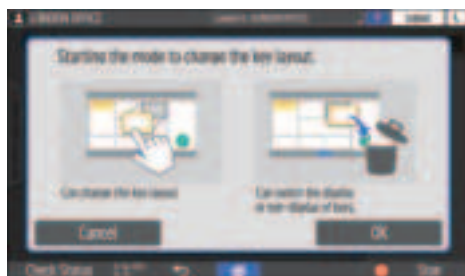
Customizing the [Send Settings] Screen

Press and hold a key on the [Send Settings] screen to customize the layout of the keys.

When the administrator has enabled user authentication and User's Own Customization, the screen can be customized for each user.

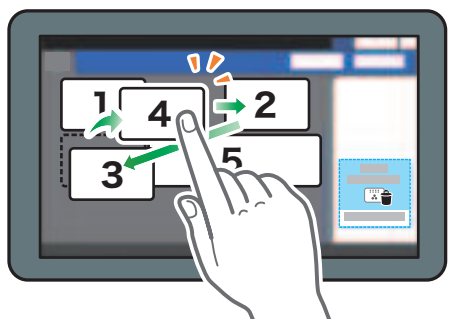
Switching to change the key layout mode

Long-press any key and press [OK] on the screen below to switch to the key sorting mode and enable changing of the key layout.



Changing the key layout

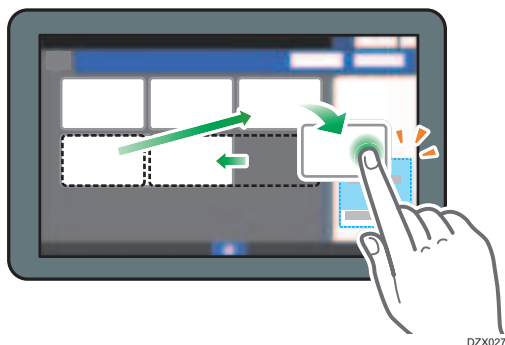
Long-press a key to change the layout, drag it to a new location, and then press [OK].



D0CMIC1355

Hiding a key

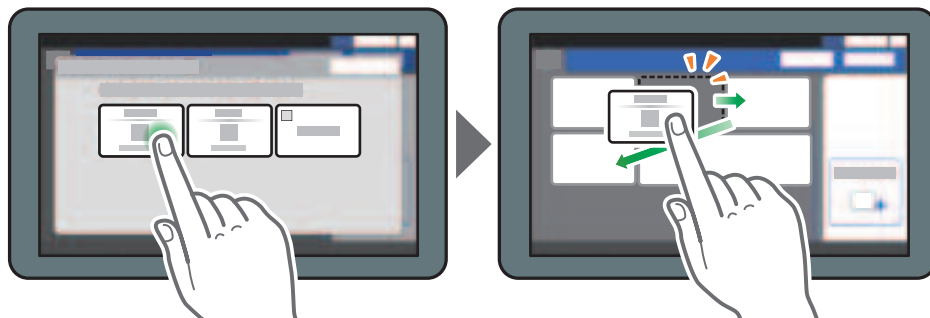
Long-press a key to hide, drag it to [Hide the Keys] (Trash icon), and then press [OK].



DZX027

Displaying a hidden key

Press "Hidden Key List" to display the hidden keys. Press and hold the key to display, drag it to the location to display, and then press [OK].



DZX028

Confirming the initial placement of the keys

Press [Menu] (⚙️) ► [Change Key Layout] ► [Check the key layout of the factory defaults] on the Scanner screen. After confirming, press [Back].

Resetting the key layout to the default

Press [Menu] (⚙️) ► [Change Key Layout] ► [Reset Layout] ► [Restore] on the Scanner screen.

Adding a Frequently Used Application or Widget to the Home Screen

You can use a frequently used icon or widget easily by adding it to the Home screen. You can organize the icons on the Home screen as you like by changing their order or using folders.

- Add an icon or widget from the application list screen.
- Each page of the Home screen can display up to 12 icons, widgets or folders, for a total of 60 items. A folder can hold up to 80 icons.
- You can add the following items to the Home screen: shortcuts of bookmarks in the browser on the screen and programs registered in the Copy, Fax or Scanner.



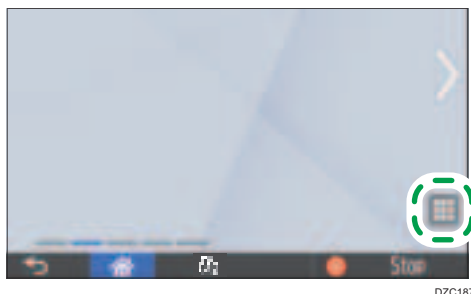
DOCZPM1338

Note

- You cannot add a shortcut of a program registered by the document server function to the Home screen.
- When you have set user authentication, log in and customize it. Each user can register their own Home screen.
- A shortcut, folder, or widget cannot be created or moved if there is no space on the Home screen. In this case, delete one of the registered items, and then perform the same operation.
- The names of icons and widgets are displayed up to 20 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters. Names composed of 21 or more double-byte characters are displayed with "...", indicating the 20th and later characters.

Adding an Icon/Widget to the Home Screen

1. Press the application list icon on the Home screen.

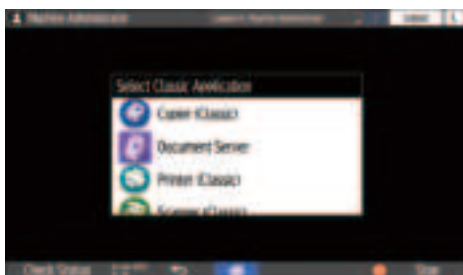


2. Press and hold the icon or widget to be added to the application list screen.



- Select the [WIDGET] tab to add a widget, or select the [PROGRAM] tab to add a program.
3. After the screen changes to the Home screen, move the icon or widget to the desired position and release it.

To add a classic application or program, select the type of application or program from the displayed menu.



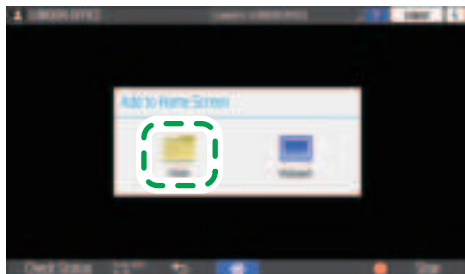
Moving or Deleting Icons and Widgets

- To move an icon or widget, press and hold the icon and move it to the desired position, and then release it.

- To delete an icon or widget, press and hold the icon and move it to the trash icon, and then release it.
- When you delete a shortcut icon of a function or program from the Home screen, the function or program is not deleted.
- To reset the Home screen, perform the following procedure.
 1. Press [Menu] () on the bottom center of the Home screen.
 2. Press [Reset Home Screen], and then press [OK].

Creating a Folder to Organize Icons

1. Press and hold a spot on the Home screen where you want to create a folder.
2. When the "Add to Home Screen" screen is displayed, press [Folder].



DZC188

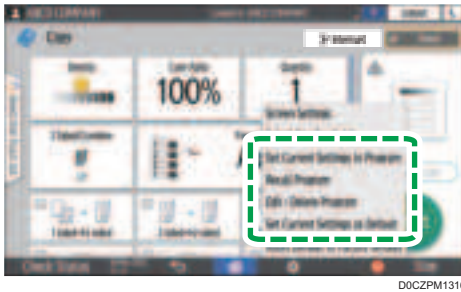
3. Open the created folder, press and hold its title, and then change the folder name.

You can enter up to 30 characters for a folder name.
4. Drag the icon and release it over the folder.

Registering Frequently Used Settings as a Program

You can register a "program" made of a combination of the functions used in the Copy, Fax, or Scanner, such as the scan setting, output setting, and address.

- You can load the registered program easily from the application screen.



- When you press the icon of a program on the Home screen, the machine applies the settings and performs the function registered in the program automatically.
- You can register the following number of items as programs.
 - Copy: 25 items
 - Fax: 100 items
 - Scanner: 100 items

Note

- You cannot register the following settings as a program:
 - Copy
[2 Sided/Combine]
 - Fax
[Subject], [Sender]
 - Scanner
[Sender], [PDF Security Settings], [Start Number]
- You can register a destination on the program of the scanner function only when [Program Setting for Destinations] of [Scanner Settings] is set to [Include Destinations].
- See "Address Book Settings", User Guide (Full Version).
- When [Program Setting for Destinations] of [Scanner Settings] is set to [Exclude Destinations], the destination registered on the recalled program in the scanner function is not displayed.
- A folder destination with a destination protection code cannot be registered on a program of the scanner function.

Registering Settings as a Program

First, configure the settings to be registered on the Copy, Fax, or Scanner screen, and then register them.

1. On the Home screen, press [Copy], [Fax], or [Scanner].

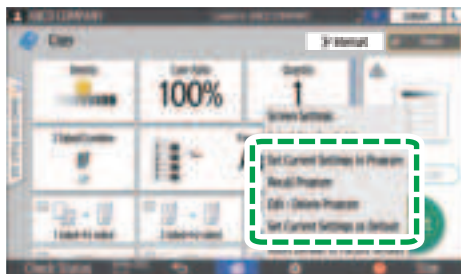


- If the icon is not displayed on the Home screen, add the icon from the application list screen.
page 47 "Adding a Frequently Used Application or Widget to the Home Screen"

2. Specify scan and output settings to be registered as a program.



3. Press [Menu] (⚙️).
4. Press [Set Current Settings to Program].



DOCZPM1316

5. Press a program number to register the settings.
6. Enter a program name and select an icon.
7. Press [Prev. Screen] ► [OK].
8. Press [Place].

The selected icon is displayed on the Home screen.

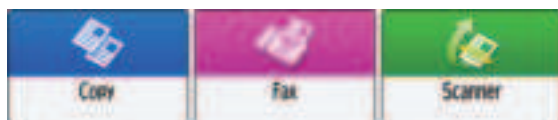


9. Press [Exit].

Changing the Contents of the Program

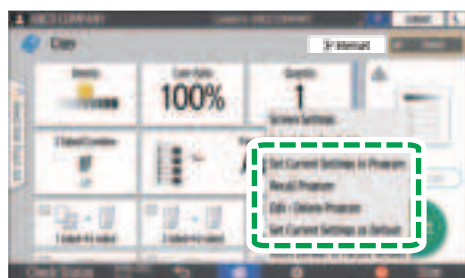
You can change a part of the program and overwrite it or change the contents and register them as a new program.

1. On the Home screen, press [Copy], [Fax], or [Scanner].



- If the icon is not displayed on the Home screen, add the icon from the application list screen.
page 47 "Adding a Frequently Used Application or Widget to the Home Screen"

2. Press [Menu] (⚙️), and then press [Recall Program].



DOCZPM1316

3. Press the program number to be changed.
4. Change the scan and output settings.
5. Press [Menu] (⚙️), and then press [Set Current Settings to Program].
6. Select a program number to register the changed settings.
 - To overwrite the program, select the number of the loaded program.
 - To register the contents as a new program, select a number that is not programmed.
7. Enter a program name and select an icon.

8. Press [Prev. Screen] ► [OK].

9. Press [Place].

10. Press [Exit].

 Note

- To change the icon or program name or to delete the program, press [Menu] () and operate from [Edit / Delete Program].

Logging In from the Control Panel

When the machine is configured by the administrator to restrict use by unauthorized users, you must authenticate your login information before starting the operation.

The authentication methods are described below.

2

- When Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, or LDAP Authentication is configured on the machine, enter the user name and password for authentication to log in to the machine before starting operation.



- Depending on the machine settings, you can use an IC card or mobile device for authentication.



- If user code authentication is specified, you may need to enter the user code to operate the restricted application.



To prevent use of the machine by an unauthorized person, always log out when you have finished using the machine. While a user is logged in, the name of the user is displayed in the system message.

↓ Note

- If the machine is not used for a specified period, the user is automatically logged out (Auto Logout). The default setting for Auto Logout is 3 minutes. The period of Auto Logout can be changed by [Auto Logout Timer] of [System Settings] or the Auto Logout setting can be disabled.
- See "Date/Time/Timer", User Guide (Full Version).
- See "Verifying Users to Operate the Machine (User Authentication)", User Guide (Full Version).

2

Logging In by Entering the User Name and Password

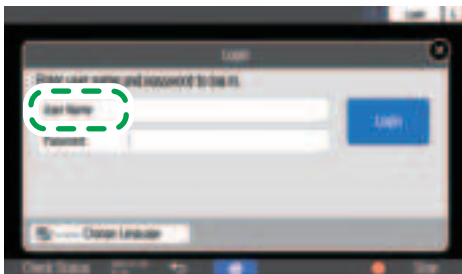
Enter the authentication information using the keyboard displayed on the control panel.

1. Press [Login] at the top right on the screen.



DZC190

2. Press [User Name].



DZC191

3. Enter the login user name, and then press [Done].
4. Press [Password].
5. Enter the login password, and then press [Done].
6. Press [Login].

↓ Note

- If an incorrect password is entered a specified number of times, login with the same name is disabled (Lockout Function). The default setting for unsuccessful attempts before a user is locked out is five. If the user is locked out, the administrator must release the lockout.

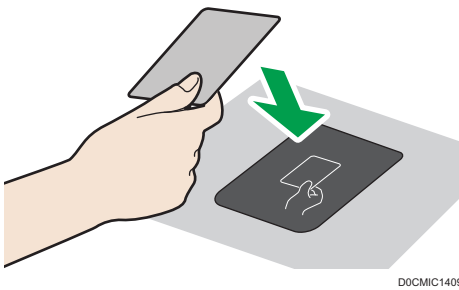
- To log out from the machine, press [Logout] at the top right on the screen, and then press [OK].

Logging In Using an IC Card

Hold an IC card over the card reader inside the control panel. If the card is not registered on the machine, enter the authentication information and register the card.

2

1. Hold an IC card over the card reader.



- When the card is registered on the machine, login operation finishes.
- When the card is not registered, the registration screen is displayed. Proceed to the next step to register the card.

2. Enter the Login User Name and Login Password, and then press [Register].

3. Hold the IC card over the card reader again.

Note

- To log out, hold the IC card over the card reader or press [Logout] at the top right on the screen.
- If another user holds the IC card over the card reader while you are still logged in, you are automatically logged out and the new user logs in.

Logging In Using a Mobile Device

Log in to the machine using the RICOH Smart Device Connector app on your mobile device. You need a mobile device that supports Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE).

1. Enable the Bluetooth function on your mobile device.

2. Start the RICOH Smart Device Connector application on the mobile device, and then flick left or right to display the login screen.



3. Press [NEXT].
4. Display the login screen on the control panel of the machine, and hold the mobile device over the Bluetooth label.



Note

- To log out from the machine, hold the mobile device over the Bluetooth label on the control panel or press [Logout] at the top right on the screen.

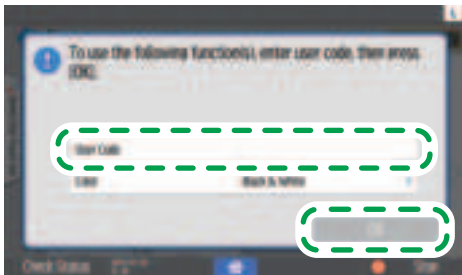
- If another user holds a mobile device over the card reader while you are still logged in, you are automatically logged out and the new user logs in.

Authenticating Using the User Code

2

When User Code Authentication is specified as the authentication method on the machine, enter the user code before operating an application.

1. Enter the user code, and then press [OK].



DZC193

Note

- When you finish the operation of the application, press [Energy Save] (⏻) or press and hold [Reset] to release the authentication status.

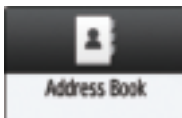
Changing the Login Password

When Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, or LDAP Authentication is configured on the machine, change the password periodically to prevent use of the machine by an unauthorized person.

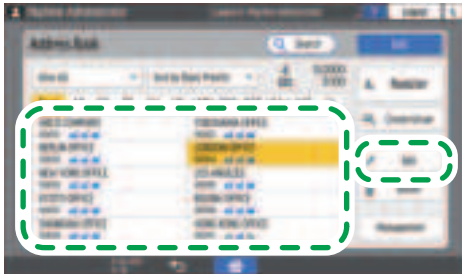
Passwords can contain the following characters. Make the password difficult to guess.

- Uppercase letters: A to Z (26 characters)
- Lowercase letters: a to z (26 characters)
- Numbers: 0 to 9 (10 characters)
- Symbols: (space) ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ ` { | } ~ (33 characters)

1. Log in to the machine.
2. Press [Address Book] on the Home screen.

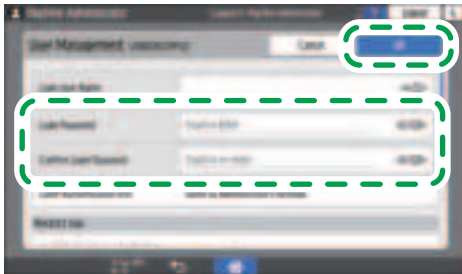


3. Select the login user from the address book, and then press [Edit].



EDN012

4. Press the [User Management / Others] tab ► [User Management].
5. Enter the new password in [Login Password], and then re-enter the password in [Confirm Login Password] for confirmation.



D0CMPC6371

You can enter up to 128 characters.

6. Press [OK] twice.
7. After completing the procedure, press [Home] (🏠).

Placing an Original on the Exposure Glass

Use the exposure glass to scan originals that cannot be placed in the auto document feeder (ADF), such as books and license cards.

⚠ CAUTION

- When lowering the ADF, do not place your hands on the hinges and exposure glass. Your hands or fingers are caught, which can result in injury.

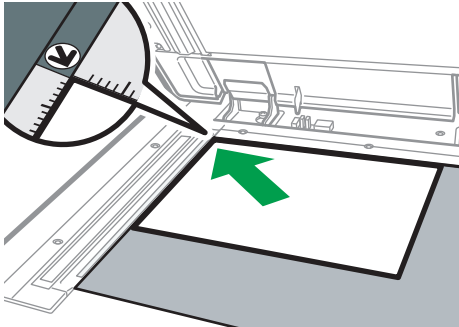
★ Important

- Do not lift the ADF forcefully. The cover of the ADF might open and cause injury. The ADF, or its hinges may also become damaged.

1. Lift the ADF.

Lift the ADF by more than 30 degrees to detect the document size automatically when placing an original on the exposure glass.

2. Place the original face down and aligned to the mark on the upper left corner of the scan area.



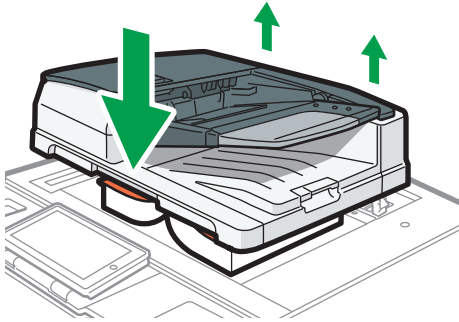
D0CZIM0054

page 204 "Recommended Original Size and Weight"

3. Lower the ADF.

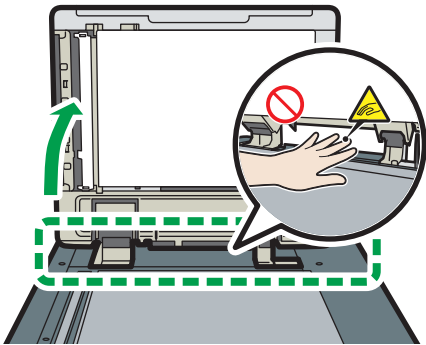
↓ Note

- You can set a book or object that is less than 40 mm (1.57 inches) thick. A book or object that is thicker than 40 mm (1.57 inches) cannot be set.
- When you place a thick book or three-dimensional original on the exposure glass and lower the ADF, the back side of the ADF rises up to accommodate the original.



2

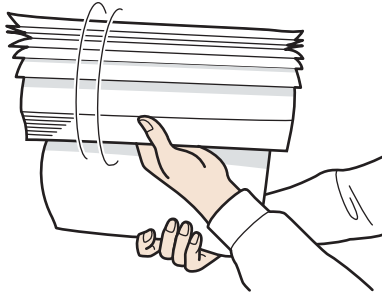
- Do not open or close the ADF with your hands placed in the space between the ADF and exposure glass.



Placing an Original in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF)

The ADF automatically scans multiple sheets of originals or two-sided originals at one time.

- For details about the sizes of originals that you can place in the ADF, see the following:
page 204 "Recommended Original Size and Weight"
See "Sizes Detectable with Auto Paper Select", User Guide (Full Version).
- If the originals described below are placed in the ADF, it may cause misfeeds, white lines, or black lines, or result in damage to the originals. Place these originals on the exposure glass.
 - Stapled or clipped originals
 - Perforated or torn originals
 - Curled, folded, or creased originals
 - Pasted originals
 - Originals with adhesive tape, glue or paste stuck to them
 - Originals with any kind of coating, such as thermal paper, art paper, aluminum foil, carbon paper, or conductive paper
 - Originals with perforated lines
 - Originals with indexes, tags, or other projecting parts
 - Sticky originals such as translucent paper
 - Thin or highly flexible originals
 - Bound originals such as books
 - Transparent originals such as transparencies or translucent paperpage 60 "Placing an Original on the Exposure Glass"
- When loading an original written by pencil on the ADF, the original may be dirty from by being scraped.
- Correct an original that tends to curl before setting on the machine.
- Fan sheets before loading so that multiple originals do not stick to each other and are not fed at the same time. Be especially careful to fan multiple originals with punched holes and multiple originals from which staples and clips have been removed.

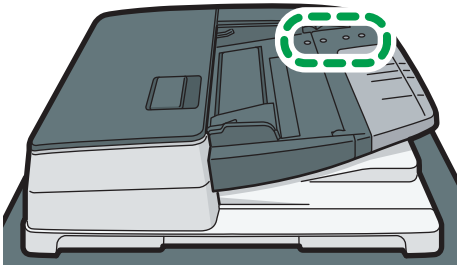


D0CMIC1421

- Do not set an original that is wet with correcting fluid or ink. The scanning glass will be stained and the stain will be scanned with the original.

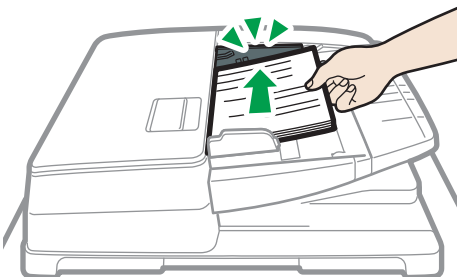
★ Important

- Do not block the sensors with your hand. Be sure to load the originals neatly and do not push them into the ADF forcibly. It may cause paper misfeeds or paper size error.

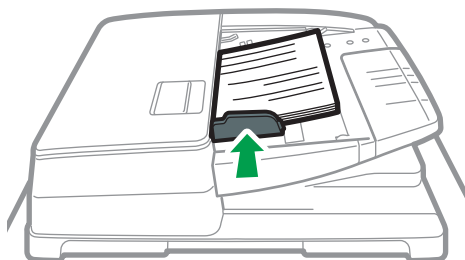


D0CMIC1259

1. Place the originals flush against the rear paper guide and adjust the paper guides to the size of the originals.



D0CMIC1420



D0CMIC1258

2. Place the aligned originals squarely face up in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF).

Place the originals with the first page facing up.

Fan sheets before loading so that multiple originals do not stick to each other and are not fed at once.

Load the originals by placing them flush against the rear paper guide.

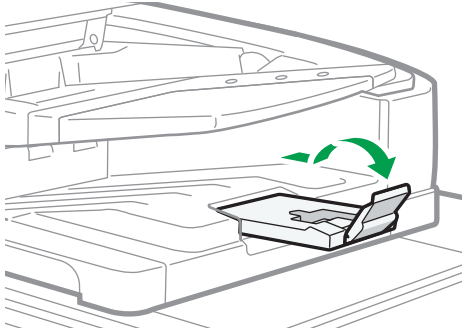
Do not stack the originals beyond the limit mark.



D0CMIC1354

Note

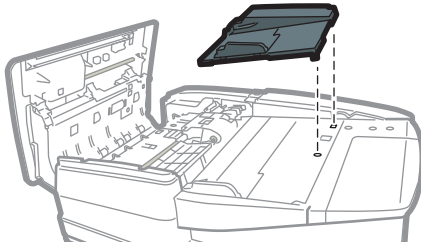
- To scan originals larger than B4 or $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$ size, pull out the ADF's extender on the original output tray, and then raise the stopper.



DOCZIM0057

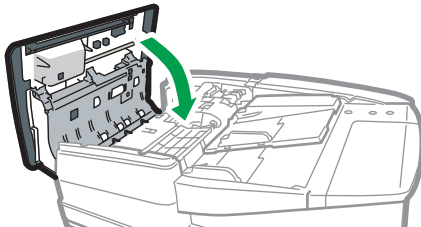
2

- To scan originals that are smaller than A6 size, attach the small size paper unit as follows:
 1. Open the ADF cover.
 2. Engage the two projections of the small size paper unit with the holes on the Auto Document Feeder (ADF).



D0CMIC1252

3. Close the ADF cover.



D0CMIC1253

3. Copy

Basic Procedure for Copying Documents

Set the original on the exposure glass or auto document feeder (ADF) to make a copy.

★ Important

- If the previous setting is still active, press [Reset] before copying.

1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



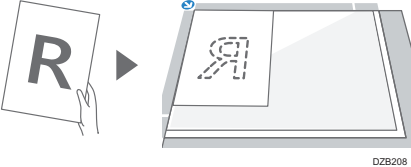
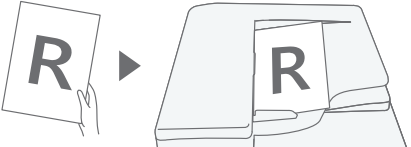
2. Place the original.

page 60 "Placing an Original on the Exposure Glass"

page 62 "Placing an Original in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF)"

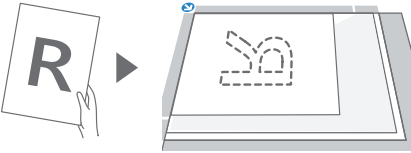
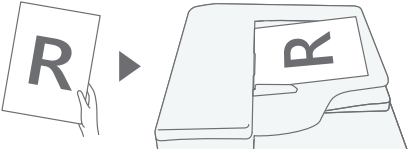
To copy both sides of the paper, to staple, or to punch holes, confirm the orientation of the original according to how you want the printout to appear.

Basic Original Orientation

Place	Orientation	
Exposure Glass	Place the original face down in a readable orientation.	
ADF	Place the original face up in a readable orientation.	

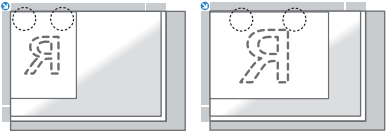
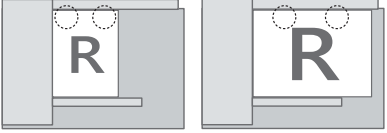
If the Readable Orientation Is Not Vertical

When you copy a portrait original larger than A4 or 8 1/2" × 11" (LT) (A3 or 11" × 17"), place it as shown below, and then specify [Original Orientation].

Place	Orientation	
Exposure Glass	Rotate the original clockwise or counter-clockwise 90 degrees and place it face down.	 D2B210
ADF	Rotate the original clockwise or counter-clockwise 90 degrees and place it face up.	 D2B211

When Specifying [Top 2] as the Staple or Punch Position

Place an original as shown below, and then specify [Original Orientation].

Place	Orientation	
Exposure glass	Place the original face down in a readable orientation.	 EDM218
Auto document feeder (ADF)	Place the original face up in a readable orientation.	 EDM219

3. Press [Original Orientation] on the Copy screen.



If the key is not displayed, select it from [Original Settings].

When you place the original face up in a readable orientation, this setting is not necessary if [Readable Direction] is displayed on the key. Placing of the original is completed.

4. Specify the Original Orientation.



If the display of this screen is not necessary when you press [Start], clear the check box.

Placing of the original is completed.

5. Press [+] or [-] in [Quantity] to specify the number of copies.



You can enter this using the keyboard after pressing [Quantity] or a number.

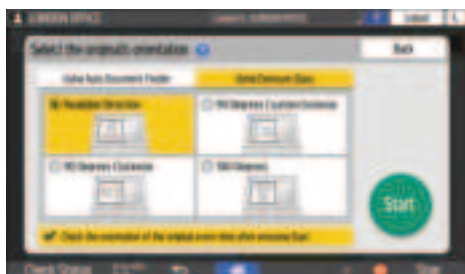
6. Press [Paper Select] and select the paper to use as necessary.



- When you select [Auto Paper Select], the paper suitable for the original is selected automatically. When the orientations of the original and paper in the paper tray do not match, the machine rotates the copied image 90 degrees automatically. However, the copied image may not be rotated depending on the settings or types of Finishing, staple or punch, for example.
- If the size of the original is not detected properly or when you make a copy on paper of a special size, specify the paper tray in which the paper to use is loaded.
- To prevent the machine from selecting other trays automatically, disable auto tray switching. See "Tray/Paper Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

7. Press [Start].

- When the [Check the orientation of the original every time after pressing Start] check box is selected in [Select the original's orientation], the screen below is displayed. Select the original orientation as necessary. If you do not need to select this each time, clear the check box.



- When you place the original on the ADF, the process of copying the original starts.
- When you place the original on the exposure glass, the copy process starts according to the setting contents. To make a copy of the second page or back side of the original, place the original accordingly on the exposure glass, and then press [Start]. Press [Finish Scn] after scanning all originals if necessary according to the setting contents.

↓ Note

- Originals scanned when no paper is loaded or when an error has occurred will be copied automatically when the machine is ready to execute copying.

Reserving a Copy Job While Executing Another Copy Job

When [Reserve] is displayed on the execution screen of the current copy job, you can scan the original of another copy job to execute after the current job is completed (Job Preset).

You can make reservations for up to eight jobs each in the Copier and Document Server functions.

1. Press [Reserve] on the execution screen of a copy job.



DOC9PA5324

2. Place a new original to scan on the machine.

page 67 "Basic Procedure for Copying Documents"

3. Specify 2 sided, Combine, Sort, and other copy settings if necessary.

page 77 "Duplex Copying"

page 79 "Combining and Copying a Multi-page Original onto a Single Sheet of Paper"

page 82 "Copying in Page Order or for Each Page Number"

4. Press [Reserve Start].

The machine starts scanning the placed original.

After the current copy job is completed, the reserved copy job starts automatically.

↓ Note

- To delete the reserved job or preview its image on the screen, press [Job Confirmation].

Interrupting the Current Copy to Copy Another Original

3

When [Interrupt] is displayed on the copy processing screen, you can pause the current copy to scan and copy another original (Interrupt mode).

1. Press [Interrupt] on the execution screen of a copy job.



2. When the scanning stops, remove the original being copied.

3. Place a new original to scan on the machine.

page 67 "Basic Procedure for Copying Documents"

4. Specify 2 sided, Combine, Sort, and other copy settings if necessary.

page 77 "Duplex Copying"

page 79 "Combining and Copying a Multi-page Original onto a Single Sheet of Paper"

page 82 "Copying in Page Order or for Each Page Number"

5. Press [Start].

6. When the Interrupt mode is finished, remove the original and copied paper.

7. Press [Interrupt].

8. Set the rest of the original that was supposed to be copied before the Interrupt mode, and press [Interrupt Start].

↓ Note

- You cannot use the Interrupt mode while scanning a fax original.
- You cannot use the Interrupt mode with the staple mode while copying in the staple mode.

Making Enlarged or Reduced Copies

You can enlarge or reduce the original when copying with the following methods:

- Enlarging or reducing at a specified reduction ratio or into a specified size (Zoom/Reduce/Enlarge/Size Magnification)
- Enlarging or reducing according to the paper size (Auto Reduce/Enlarge)
- Reducing slightly (Create Margin)

3

Specifying a Copy Ratio or Size

1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original.

page 67 "Basic Procedure for Copying Documents"

The base point of reduce/enlarge is different for the exposure glass and Auto Document Feeder (ADF) as shown in the following table:

Setting position	Base point	Enlarge	Reduce
Exposure glass	Enlarged or reduced from the top left.  DZB222	 DZB224	 DZB225
Auto document feeder (ADF)	Enlarged or reduced from the bottom left  DZB223		

When you place two-sided originals in the ADF, the top right corner of the original will be the base point for the enlargement/reduction of the reverse side. To enlarge or reduce from the same point, set the original on the exposure glass and perform 2-sided copy.

3. Press [Copy Ratio] and select a copy ratio or size.



To specify a copy ratio or size other than the displayed setting, press [Others] and perform the following procedure.

Specifying a copy ratio (Zoom/Reduce/Enlarge)

Enter a value or select the copy ratio.



DOCZPM6505

Specifying a size (Size Magnification)

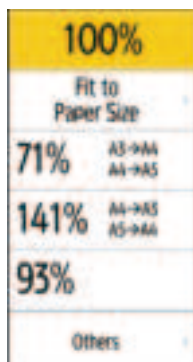
Press [Specify Copy Size] and enter the length of the original and copied image.



4. Press [Start].

Note

- You can change the options of the copy ratio that is displayed on the Copy screen when pressing [Copy Ratio]. You can also change the enlargement and reduction ratios that appear when [Copy Ratio] ► [Others] is pressed on the Copy screen.

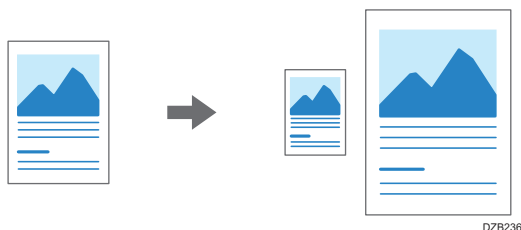


3

- See "Reduce / Enlarge", User Guide (Full Version).

Enlarging or Reducing According to the Paper Size

The original is enlarged or reduced to fit on the specified paper size (Scale to Paper Size).



DZB236

For the original size detected on the exposure glass or in the ADF automatically, see the following section:

See "Sizes Detectable with Auto Paper Select", User Guide (Full Version).

To copy a document whose size cannot be detected, specify [Original Size] on the Copy screen.

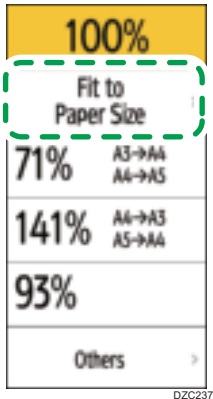
1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original.

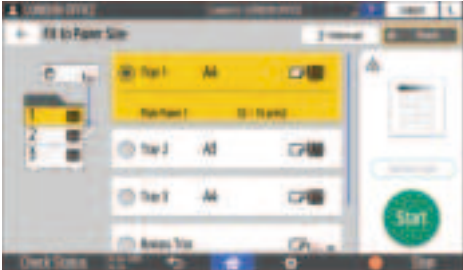
page 67 "Basic Procedure for Copying Documents"

3. On the Copy screen, press [Copy Ratio] and [Fit to Paper Size].

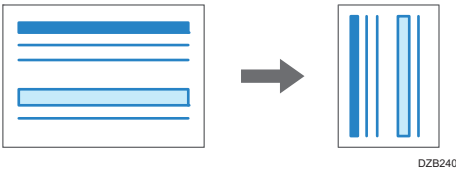


3

4. Select the tray loaded with the paper to use.



When the orientations of the original and paper in the paper tray do not match, the machine rotates the copied image automatically. To reduce an original of A3 (11 × 17) size to A4 (8¹/₂ × 11) size, for example, you can select either A4 (8¹/₂ × 11) or A4 (8¹/₂ × 11).



5. Press [Start].

Reducing Slightly to Increase the Margins

The original is reduced to 93% in size and printed in the center of the paper. This setting is useful if you want to copy an original to a paper of the same size without the edges being slightly cropped when copied in full size or to increase the margins.

1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original.

page 67 "Basic Procedure for Copying Documents"

3. On the Copy screen, press [Create Margin].



- If the key is not displayed, register [Create Margin], by using [Customize Function: Copy (Standard Mode)] or [Customize Function: Copy (All View Mode)].
- See "Others (Copier / Document Server Settings)" User Guide (Full Version).

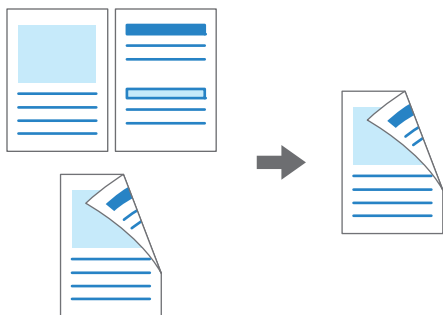
4. Press [Start].

↓ Note

- You can change the copy ratio of [Create Margin] to a value other than 93%.
- See "Reduce / Enlarge", User Guide (Full Version).

Duplex Copying

You can copy two 1-sided pages or one 2-sided page onto the front and back sides of a single sheet of paper.



DZB251

The size of the original that can be copied differs from that of the 1-sided copy.
page 204 "Recommended Original Size and Weight"

1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



2. Press [1 Sided→2 Sided] or [2 Sided→2 Sided] on the Copy screen.



Duplex Copying with the Settings Other Than Those Displayed on the Keys

1. Press [2 Sided/Combine].



2. Specify the original and print side settings.



- Original Direction: Specify the orientation to place the originals.
- Original Setting: Specify the condition of the originals to copy (1 sided/2 sided (Page Opening Direction)).
- Print Side Setting: Select the finish from [Open to Right/Left] or [Open to Top].

3. Press [OK].

3. Place the original.

page 67 "Basic Procedure for Copying Documents"

4. Press [Start].

- When placing the originals on the exposure glass, press [Finish Scn] after scanning all of the originals if necessary according to the setting contents and number of originals.

↓ Note

- You can specify the margins when copying a 1-sided original onto both sides of paper.
- See "Edit / Stamp", User Guide (Full Version).
- You cannot perform Duplex Copy onto the following paper types:
 - Prepunched
 - Cardstock
 - Transparency
 - Tab Stock
 - Translucent Paper
 - Label paper
 - Recycled Paper
 - Thick paper 4
- You can change the setting contents of the two-sided copy key on the Copy screen.
- See "Others (Copier / Document Server Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).
- See "Copying Facing Pages of a Book Type Original or Two-sided Original", User Guide (Full Version).

Combining and Copying a Multi-page Original onto a Single Sheet of Paper

You can copy multiple sheets in an original onto one side or both sides of a sheet of paper to save paper.



3

The arrangement of copied pages and copy ratio varies depending on the original orientation and combined pages.

Original Orientation	Combine 2 pages	Combine 4 pages	Combine 8 pages
 DZB254	 DZB256	 DZB257	 DZB258
 DZB255	 DZB259	 DZB260	 DZB261

1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.

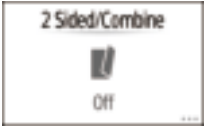


2. On the Copy screen, press [1 sided→Comb 2orig].



To combine with the settings other than those displayed on the keys

1. Press [2 Sided/Combine].



2. Specify about the original, print side, and combining.



- Original Direction: Specify the orientation to place the originals.
- Original Setting: Specify the condition of the originals to copy (1 sided/2 sided (Page Opening Direction)).
- Print Side Setting: Specify the condition of the copied sheet (1 sided/2 sided (Page Opening Direction)).
- Combine Settings: Specify the number of pages to combine on one side of a sheet.

3. Press [OK].

3. Press [Paper Select] and select the paper to copy onto.

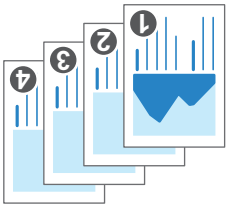
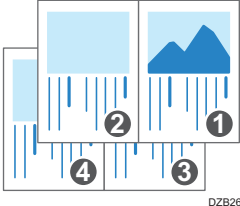


4. Place an original.

page 67 "Basic Procedure for Copying Documents"

To position the right-page first and then the left page when copying an original written longitudinally, place the original upside down in the ADF.

Example: Combining 2 Pages

Orientation	Results
 DZB262	 DZB263

5. Press [Start].

When placing the originals on the exposure glass, press [Finish Scn] after scanning all of the originals if necessary according to the number of originals.

Note

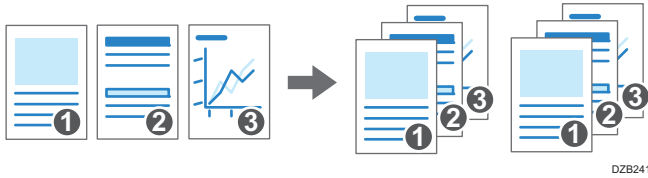
- The minimum copy ratio in the Combine function is 25%. For example, if you copy an A3 (11 × 17)-size original onto A4 (8 1/2 × 11)-size paper with [1 sided → Comb 4orig], the copy ratio becomes less than 25% and parts of the image might not be copied.
- You can configure the following settings in [Settings] ► [Copier / Document Server Settings] ► [2 Sided / Combine]:
 - [Copy Order in Combine]: The order of combined images
 - [Separation Line in Combine]: The separation line between combined pages
See "2 Sided / Combine", User Guide (Full Version).
- You can configure the following settings in [Settings] ► [Copier / Document Server Settings] ► [Edit / Stamp]:
 - [Erase Original Shadow in Combine]: Determine whether to erase the boundary margin around each original to maintain the margin
See "Edit / Stamp", User Guide (Full Version).
- You can change the setting contents of the Combine key on the Copy screen.
- See "Others (Copier / Document Server Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).

Copying in Page Order or for Each Page Number

When copying two or more copies of multi-page originals, you can specify the page order as described below.

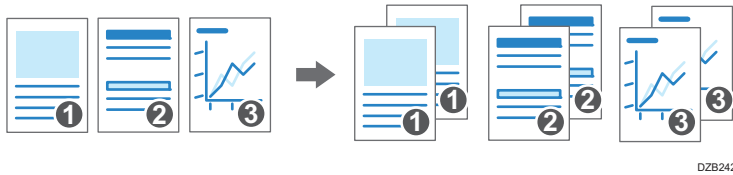
Sort

Copies in the order of the original.



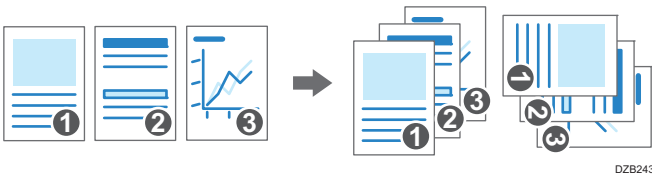
Stack

Groups together copies of each page in a multi-page original.



Rotate Sort

Copies in the order of the original and outputs by rotating each copy set. Each copy set is output lengthwise and breadthwise alternately to identify each set.



To specify rotate sort, use two paper trays and set the same size and type of paper in the trays in different orientations, vertically (☐) and horizontally (☐). When the paper cannot be set in vertical (☐) orientation, you cannot specify Rotate Sort.

★ Important

- An optional unit such as the shift tray or finisher is required to use this function.
- page 351 "Functions Requiring Optional Configurations"

1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original.

page 67 "Basic Procedure for Copying Documents"

3. Press [+] or [-] under [Quantity] on the Copy screen to specify the number of copies.



You can enter this using the keyboard after pressing [Quantity] or a number.

4. Press [Sort/Stack] on the Copy screen.



If the key is not displayed, select it from [Finishing].

If the optional equipment that can stack the copied sheets is not attached to the machine, only [Sort] is displayed on the key.

5. Select the function to specify.



6. Press [Start].

When selecting [Sort] or [Rotate Sort] and placing an original on the exposure glass, a single set of copies is made. After scanning all of the originals, press [Finish Scn] to copy the rest of the sets.

↓ Note

- If you specify sort or stack with the finisher or shift tray installed, the output sheets will be shifted by each set.

- You can change the action to perform when paper or memory runs out during sorting under [Rotate Sort: Auto Paper Continue] or [Memory Full Auto Scan Restart].
- See "Finishing", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Fax

Basic Procedure for Transmitting Faxes

The machine scans an original to transmit it by fax into the machine's memory before establishing a communication with the destination (Memory Transmission).

You can also transmit a fax while confirming the status of the fax destination.

See "Sending a Fax While Scanning the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

★ Important

- It is recommended that you call the receivers and confirm with them when sending important documents.

1. Press [Fax] on the Home screen.



2. Check that [Fax] and [Memory Transmission] are displayed on the fax screen.



DOCZPM6757

3. Place the original in the ADF or on the exposure glass.

See "Setting an Original to Send by Fax on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Press [Settings], and then specify the scan settings.

See "Sending a Fax at the Image Quality Suitable for the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

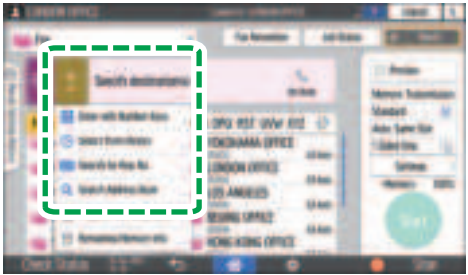
5. Specify the destination.



DOCZPM6758

- To enter the fax number manually, select the destination from the destination history, or search for the destination in the address book, press , and specify the destination.

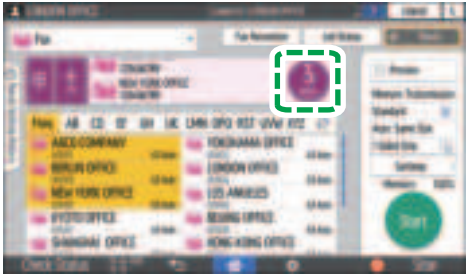
4



DOCZPM6759

You can select only the destination entered using the numeric keypad from the history.

- To specify the destination again, press .



DOCZPM6760

6. On the [Settings] screen, specify [Sender] as necessary.

- When a login user is operating the machine, the login user becomes the sender.
To receive a transmission result by e-mail, select [Email Transmission Results]. The e-mail address that you selected the [Register as both a destination and a sender] check box when registering the address will be used as the e-mail address of the sender.
See "Registering E-mail Addresses in the Address Book", User Guide (Full Version).
- To print the sender's name on the page received at the destination, select [Stamp Sender Name].

- If the Auto Specify Sender Name function is enabled, the sender is automatically specified and you can omit the procedure for specifying a sender.

7. Press [Start].

To cancel transmission after scanning the original, press [Stop] and operate in [Job Status] ► [Transmission Standby File].

See "Confirming and Handling a Document in the Fax Queue", User Guide (Full Version).

When fax transmission is complete, the message "Transmission was finished." is displayed.

When Fax Transmission Ended Sound is enabled, a sound is produced.

See "Configuring the Type and Volume of the Sound Emitted When Using Fax", User Guide (Full Version).

⬇ Note

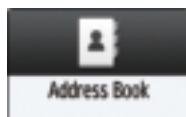
- If the telephone line you are connected to requires time to connect to the public line after you dial the external number, enter a [Pause] after entering the number to specify the time to wait before dialing the number. The machine pauses for about two seconds for each single [Pause] entered.
- To use tone-dialing in a pulse-dialing environment, press [Tone]. A tone signal is generated for every number you enter afterward.
- You can perform Immediate transmission only when the total number of destinations specified for all documents exceeds the maximum value.
- The communication that has been initiated first is displayed on the screen when performing three simultaneous communications.

Registering Fax Numbers in the Address Book

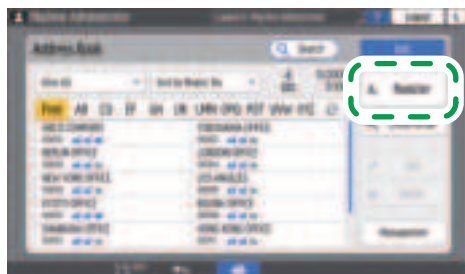
By registering the destinations to which you frequently send faxes together with the send conditions in the address book, you can easily send faxes.

Registering a Fax Number and Send Conditions

1. Press [Address Book] on the Home screen.



2. Press [Register] on the Address Book screen.



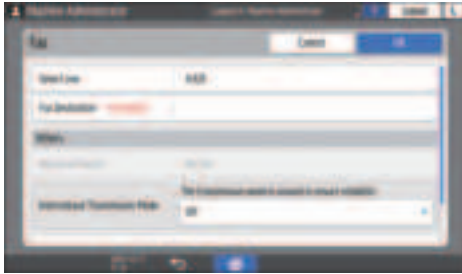
EDN022

3. Enter the information of the destination on the [Name] tab, and then select a title to classify it.



4. Press [Destinations] tab ► [Fax].

5. Specify the Fax Destinations and send conditions.



- **Select Line:** Select the line to use.
- **International Transmission Mode:** Specify whether to reduce errors occurring when sending abroad.
- **Fax Header:** Select the name of the sender printed on the reception sheet of the destination. Register the fax header in advance.

See "Printing the Destination Name, Fax Header, and Standard Message on the Fax Received at the Destination", User Guide (Full Version).

- **Label Insertion:** Specify the name (title + name) and fixed phrase printed on the reception sheet of the destination.

See "Printing the Destination Name, Fax Header, and Standard Message on the Fax Received at the Destination", User Guide (Full Version).

6. Press the [User Management / Others] tab as necessary, and specify the settings.

- **User Management:** Enter the authentication information to login and use the machine.
- **Registration Destination Group:** Select a group to which this destination belongs as necessary. Register the group in advance.

See "Registering Groups in the Address Book", User Guide (Full Version).

- **Display Priority:** When the destinations are sorted in the order of priority, a destination with higher priority is displayed prior to that with lower priority. The destinations with the same priority are displayed in the order of registration.
- **Destination Protection:** Select this check box to require entering of the protection code to select the destination.

See "Using the Protection Function to Prevent the Misuse of Addresses", User Guide (Full Version).

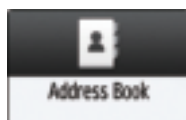
7. Press [OK].

8. After completing the procedure, press [Home] (🏠).

Changing/Deleting the Registered Data Such as Fax Number

If you delete the destination used for the personal box, file transmission will fail. Exclude the destination from the personal box before deleting it.

1. Press [Address Book] on the Home screen.



2. Select the destination to change or delete on the Address Book screen.



EDN013

You can delete multiple destinations at one time.

3. Press [Edit] or [Delete] to change or delete the destination information.
4. When changing or deleting is complete, press [Home] (🏠).

Displaying a Preview before Sending a Fax

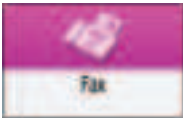
You can display the preview of the scanned document on the display of the machine to check if it is scanned as specified.

This function cannot be used when sending a fax while using any of the following:

- Immediate Transmission
- On-hook dialing
- Manual dialing

To display the preview in the correct orientation, specify [Original Orientation] in [Settings] correctly.

1. Press [Fax] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF) or on the exposure glass.

See "Setting an Original to Send by Fax on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

3. On the fax screen, press [Settings] ► [Original Orientation] to specify the orientation of the original, and then press [Preview].



4. Configure the scan settings.

See "Sending a Fax at the Image Quality Suitable for the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

5. Specify the destination on the fax screen, and then press [Start].
6. Check the preview.



- Flick the image left or right to switch between the pages.
- Pinch in or out on the image to zoom in or out.

7. Press [Transmit].

To cancel transmission and perform the procedure from scanning the original again, press [Cancel].

Viewing the Transmission Result of Sent Faxes

You can check the result of a fax transmission on the fax screen, in various reports, or on the screen of a computer.

The following reports are printed according to the transmission result or the settings:

- Communication Result Report: The result of Memory Transmission is printed.
- Immediate TX Result Report: The result of Immediate Transmission is printed.
- Communication Failure Report: This report is printed when a fax could not be sent to all specified destinations by Memory Transmission.
- Error Report: This report is printed when sending a fax by Immediate Transmission failed.
- Memory Storage Report: This report is printed when the scanned document could not be stored in the memory.

Note

- The fax transmission results can also be confirmed in Records.
- See "Viewing the History of Sent and Received Faxes", User Guide (Full Version).
- Specify [Notification of Results] when sending a fax to receive the transmission result by e-mail.
- page 93 "Viewing the Transmission Result of Sent Faxes"

Confirming the Information on the Fax Screen

Press [Job Status] ► [Transmission Result] on the fax screen to view the information.

1. Press [Fax] on the Home screen.



2. Press [Job Status] on the fax screen.



DOCZPM6763

3. Press [Transmission Result], and select the transmission result to display.



- **Display All**
Displays the transmission results from among the total number of both transmission and reception results, which cannot exceed 1,000.
- **Display per User**
Press this to display the result of transmissions performed by a specific user. Select the user to display the results and press [Display].
- **Display Specified Period**
Press this to display the result of transmissions performed in the specified period. Specify the period by entering the start and end dates or selecting from the calendar displayed on the screen, and press [Display].

4. Check the transmission results and press [Exit].

- "--LAN-Fax -->" is shown as the result of transmission to the machine when you send a fax from your computer. For the result of transmission to the destination, refer to the transmission result of the same document number.
- The destination may be displayed as "*" depending on the security settings.
- In a field for an e-mail that was encrypted and distributed or forwarded, the encryption icon () is displayed.
- To display the result of the transmission that is completed while displaying the transmission results, close the transmission result screen and open it again.

Note

- You cannot confirm or change an outgoing document in LAN-Fax, document waiting, or document whose status is "Trnsmtg.".

Checking the Result in Communication Result Report

The report is printed every time you send a document by Memory Transmission. When more than one destination is specified, the report is printed after transmitting the fax to all destinations is completed.

Checking the Result in Immediate TX Result Report

In the factory default setting, the machine is configured not to print the report automatically. Specify Auto Print to print it every time you send a document by Immediate Transmission.

See "Others (Fax Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).

↓ Note

- If the page was sent successfully, the Page column gives the total number of pages sent successfully.

Checking the Result in Communication Failure Report

This report is printed if the fax could not be sent to all specified destinations by Memory Transmission when Fax is not set to Auto Print (the factory default setting).

Checking the Result in Error Report

This report is printed if a fax could not be sent by Immediate Transmission when Immediate Transmission Result Report is not set to Auto Print (the factory default setting).

Viewing Memory Storage Report

Memory Storage Report is printed when the document to send by Memory Transmission is stored in the memory.

↓ Note

- Even if the machine is set up not to print this report, it is still printed if an original could not be stored.
- It is not printed when you are using Parallel Memory Transmission.

Checking by E-mail

You can check the fax transmission result on your computer by sending an e-mail to the sender or the e-mail address specified when sending the fax. The image of the original sent by fax, along with the destination, date and time, and transmission result is included in the e-mail.

↓ Note

- To view the report without text disruption, select a font of even character width in your e-mail application's settings.

1. Press [Fax] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF) or on the exposure glass.

See "Setting an Original to Send by Fax on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

3. To send a notification e-mail to the sender, press [Settings] ► [Sender], and then specify the sender.

When a login user is operating the machine, the login user becomes the sender.

The e-mail address that you selected for the [Use as Sender] check box when registering the address will be used as the e-mail address of the sender.

See "Registering E-mail Addresses in the Address Book", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Select the [Notification of Result] check box, and then press [OK].



DZX317

5. To send a notification e-mail to a destination other than the sender, press [Notification of Result] on the [Settings] screen, and then specify the destination of the e-mail.



6. Configure the scan settings.

See "Sending a Fax at the Image Quality Suitable for the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

7. After configuring the send settings, specify the destination on the fax screen, and send the fax.

page 85 "Basic Procedure for Transmitting Faxes"

See "Basic Procedure for Sending Internet Faxes", User Guide (Full Version).

See "Basic Procedure for Sending IP-Faxes", User Guide (Full Version).

Confirming the Information in Web Image Monitor

In Web Image Monitor, you can view up to 1,000 of the latest total results of the transmission and reception history.

1. Log in to Web Image Monitor as the administrator.

See "Logging in to Web Image Monitor", User Guide (Full Version).

2. From the "Status/Information" menu, click [Job].

3. Click [Transmission] under [Fax History].

4. Confirm the transmission history.

- Click [Details] to view the details.
- To save the history as a list to a file in the CSV format, click [Download Transmission List].

5. Click [Logout] and then close the Web browser.

5. Print

Installing the Printer Driver by Using Device Software Manager Installer

Device Software Manager is a support utility for driver installation in Windows. Device Software Manager helps you to detect the latest driver via the internet automatically according to the computer you are using and install it with a simple procedure.

★ Important

- Manage Printers permission is required to install the drivers. Log on as an Administrators group member.
- Device Software Manager supports Windows OS only. To install the printer driver on Mac OS, see the following sections:
- page 116 "Installing the Printer Driver for Network Connection (macOS)"
- See "Installing the Printer Driver for USB Connection (macOS)", User Guide (Full Version).
- Follow the instructions of the installer to connect the USB cable.

5

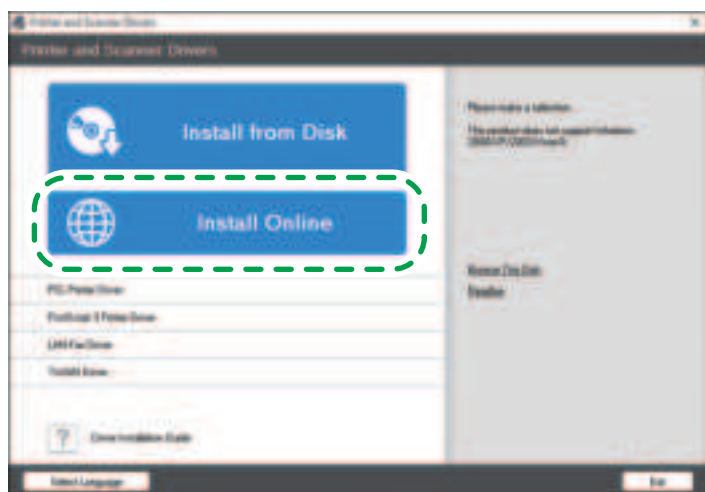
Installing Device Software Manager from the CD-ROM

1. Set the CD-ROM in the computer.

If the installer does not start automatically, double-click [Setup.exe] in the root directory of the CD-ROM.

2. Select a language, and then click [OK].

3. Click [Install Online].



DZX615

4. Click [Accept Agreement and Install] on the "License Agreement" screen.
5. On the "Quality Improvement Program" screen, select [I will participate in the Quality Improvement Program] or [I will not participate in the Quality Improvement Program], and then click [Next].
6. On the "Driver Update Notification Setting" screen, specify whether to display the message about the driver update, and then click [Next].

The process of installing Device Software Manager starts.

7. Select the connection between the machine and computer, and then click [Next].



DOCZDM0201

- Network: Search for devices connected to the network.

- USB: Following the instructions on the "Connection with device" screen, connect the machine and the computer with the USB cable to search for the machine.

8. Select this machine from among the detected devices, and then click [Next].



DOCZDM0202

5

The installation of the driver starts.

- If "Could not verify publisher" is displayed at the beginning of installation, continue the installation.
- When you connect the machine and the computer with a USB cable, follow the instructions on the installer screen.



If the machine is not detected, click [Cancel Connection]. Even if the connection is canceled, the installation is complete. After the installer screen is closed, the machine is added automatically when it is connected to the computer with the USB cable.

9. When the installation is complete, click [Finish].

When you are prompted to restart your computer, restart it by following the instructions that appear.

↓ Note

- After completing the installation, Device Software Manager icon is created on the desktop screen.



- You can update the installed printer driver with Device Software Manager.
- See "Updating the Driver (Windows)", User Guide (Full Version).
- If the "User Account Control" dialog box appears during the driver installation procedure, click [Yes] or [Continue].
- If the "Windows Security" dialog box appears during the driver installation procedure, click [Install this driver software anyway].

Installing Device Software Manager from the Downloaded File

1. Double-click the downloaded file.
2. Select the [Run Driver Installer after installation] check box, and then click [Accept Agreement and Install].
3. On the "Quality Improvement Program" screen, select [I will participate in the Quality Improvement Program] or [I will not participate in the Quality Improvement Program], and then click [Next].
4. On the "Driver Update Notification Setting" screen, specify whether to display the message about the driver update, and then click [Next].

The process of installing Device Software Manager starts.

5. On the "End User License Agreement" screen, click [Agree and Go to Next].

6. Select the connection between the machine and computer, and then click [Next].

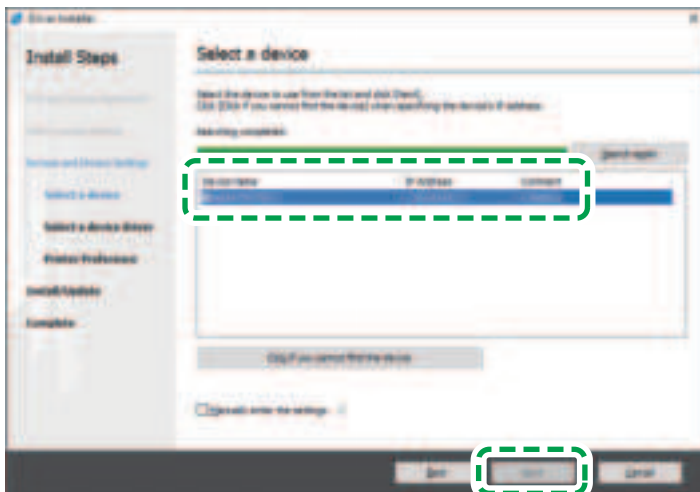


DZX730

5

- Network: Search for devices connected to the network.
- USB: Following the instructions on the "Connection with device" screen, connect the machine and the computer with the USB cable to search for the machine.

7. Select this machine from among the detected devices, and then click [Next].



DZK730

The installation of the driver starts.

- If "The publisher could not be verified" is displayed at the beginning of installation, continue the installation. There is no problem with the started installer that is downloaded from the manufacturer's website. Continue the installation.
- When you connect the machine and the computer with a USB cable, follow the instructions on the installer screen.



5

If the machine is not detected, click [Cancel Connection]. Even if the connection is canceled, the installation is complete. After the installer screen is closed, the machine is added automatically when it is connected to the computer with the USB cable.

8. When the installation is complete, click [Finish].

↓ Note

- Double-click the Device Software Manager icon created on the Finder of the computer to update the printer driver.
- See "Updating the Driver (Windows)", User Guide (Full Version).



Installing the Printer Driver for Network Connection (Windows)

When the machine and the computer are connected to the same network, the installer searches for the machine to install the printer driver. If the installer cannot find the machine, specify the IP address or machine name to install the printer driver.

★ Important

- **Manage Printers permission is required to install the driver. Log on as an Administrators group member.**

↓ Note

- If the "User Account Control" dialog box appears during the driver installation procedure, click [Yes] or [Continue].
- If the "Windows Security" dialog box appears during the driver installation procedure, click [Install this driver software anyway].

5

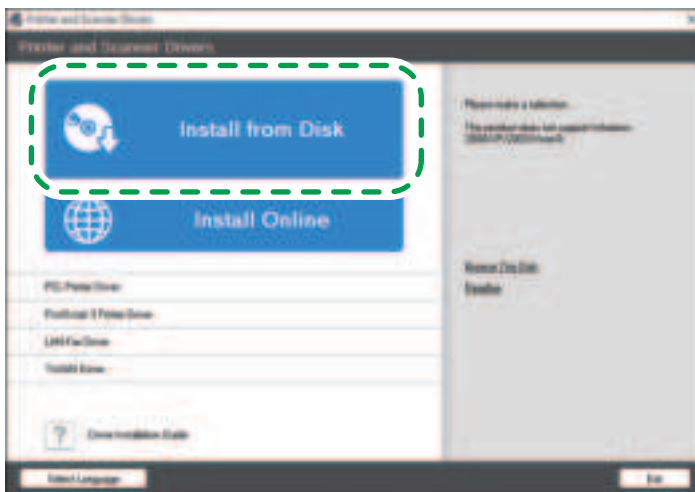
Installing the PCL 6 Printer Driver from the CD-ROM

1. Set the CD-ROM in the computer.

If the installer does not start automatically, double-click [Setup.exe] in the root directory of the CD-ROM.

2. Select a language, and then click [OK].

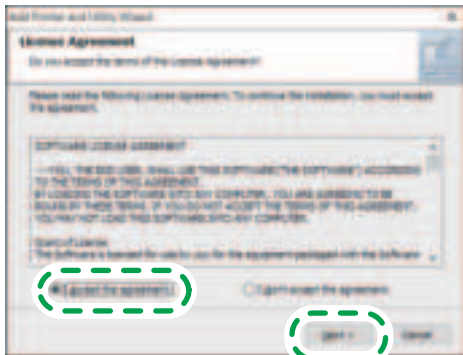
3. Click [Install from Disk].



DZC992

4. Click [Network Printer(s)].

5. On the "License Agreement" screen, select [I accept the agreement], and then click [Next].

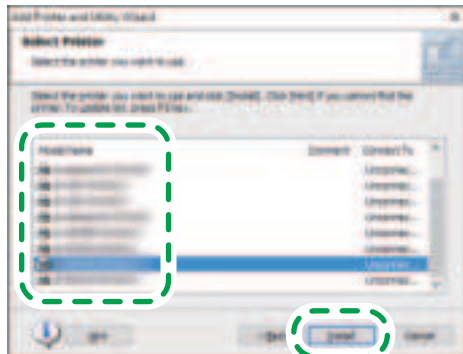


DZC081

6. Confirm the "Confirm Network Connection" screen, and then click [Next].

The search detects devices connected to the network.

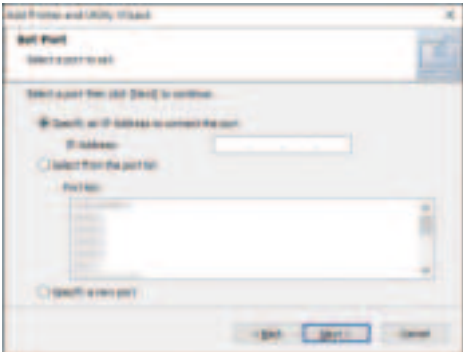
7. Select this machine from among the devices, and then click [Install].



DZC080

8. If the "Set Port" screen is displayed, select the setting method of the port.

This screen is displayed when the computer cannot access the machine.



Specify the port to use for the connection between the computer and machine using one of the following methods:

To specify the IP address

1. Enter the IP address of the machine, and then click [Next].
2. Proceed to Step 9.

To select from the port list

1. Select the port to use for the connection between the computer and machine, and then click [Next].
2. Proceed to Step 9.

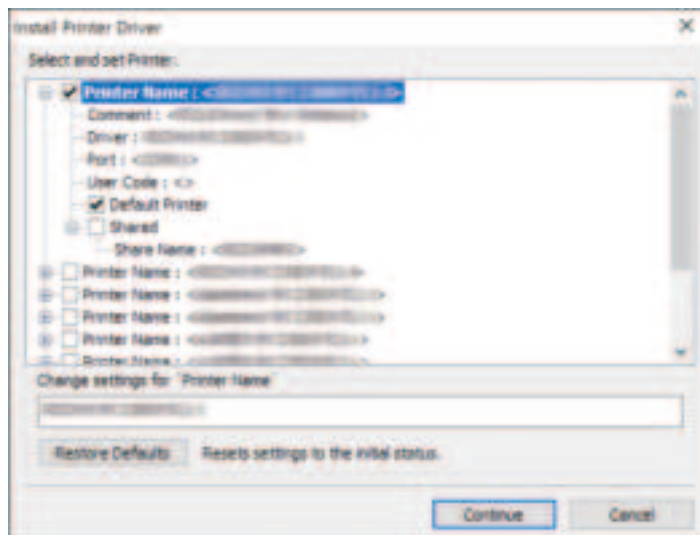
To create a new port

1. Select [Specify a new port], and then click [Next].
2. On the "Add Printer and Utility Wizard" screen, select [Standard TCP/IP Port] and click [Next].
3. On the "Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard" screen, click [Next].
4. On the "Add port" screen, enter the printer name or IP address of the machine, and then click [Next].

The port name is automatically entered. You can change the port name.

5. When the "Additional port information required" screen is displayed, select [RICOH Network Printer C model], and then click [Next].
6. Click [Finish].

9. Specify the name of the printer to install, and whether to use it as the default printer.



10. Click [Continue].

Printer driver installation starts.

11. Click [Finish].

When you are prompted to restart your computer, restart it by following the instructions that appear.

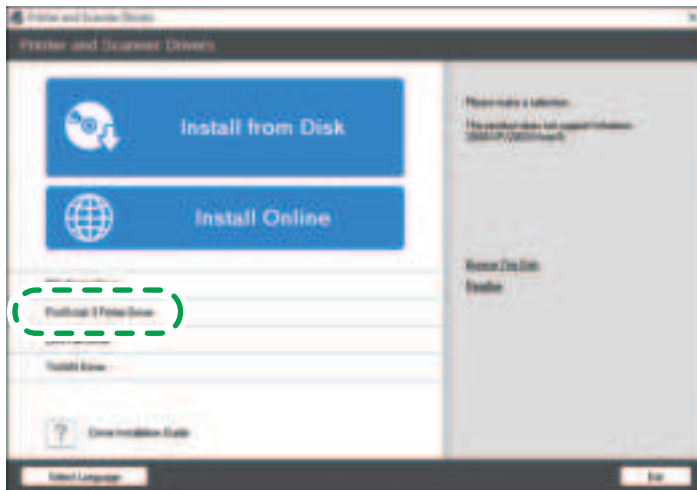
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver from the CD-ROM

1. Set the CD-ROM in the computer.

If the installer does not start automatically, double-click [Setup.exe] in the root directory of the CD-ROM.

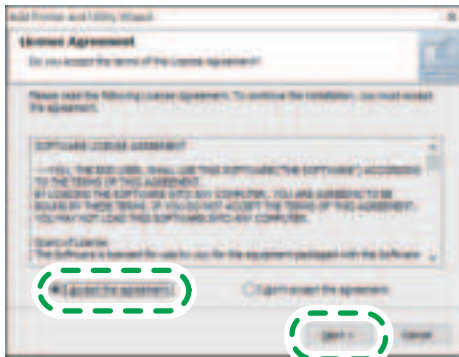
2. Select a language, and then click [OK].**3. Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

5



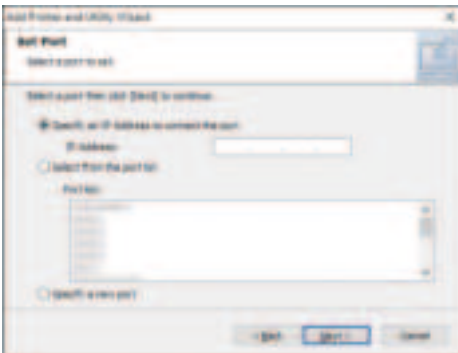
DZC990

4. On the "License Agreement" screen, select **[I accept the agreement]**, and then click **[Next]**.



DZC081

5. Click **[Next]**.
6. Select a method to connect a port.



Specify the port to use for the connection between the computer and machine using one of the following methods:

To specify the IP address

1. Enter the IP address of the machine, and then click **[Next]**.

To select from the port list

1. Select the port to use for the connection between the computer and machine, and then click **[Next]**.

To create a new port

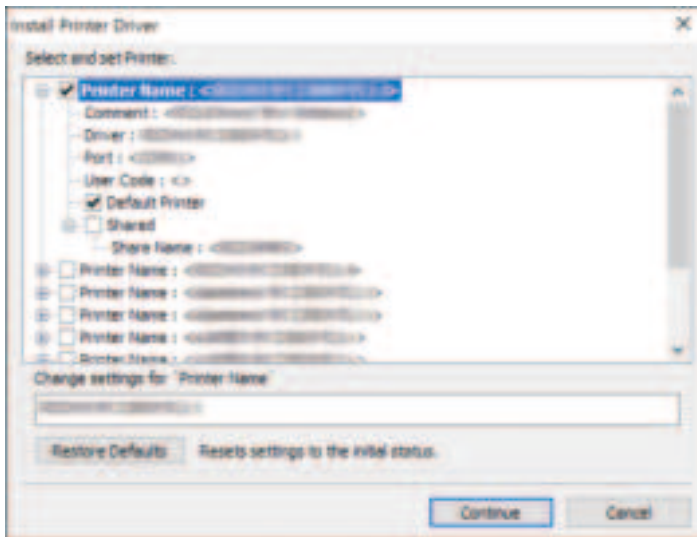
1. Select **[Specify a new port]**, and then click **[Next]**.
2. On the "Add Printer and Utility Wizard" screen, select **[Standard TCP/IP Port]** and click **[Next]**.
3. On the "Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard" screen, click **[Next]**.

4. On the "Add port" screen, enter the printer name or IP address of the machine, and then click [Next].

The port name is automatically entered. You can change the port name.

5. When the "Additional port information required" screen is displayed, select [RICOH Network Printer C model], and then click [Next].
6. Click [Finish].

7. Select the [Printer Name] of the machine to open the menu tree, and then specify the setting items.



8. Click [Continue].

Printer driver installation starts.

9. On the "Install Printer Driver" screen, click [Open Printer Properties].
10. Specify the option configuration or authentication settings in each tab, and then click [OK].
11. On the "Install Printer Driver" screen, click [Next].
12. Click [Finish].

When you are prompted to restart your computer, restart it by following the instructions that appear.

Installing the PCL 6/PostScript 3 Printer Driver from the Downloaded File

1. Unzip the downloaded file, and double-click [RV_SETUP.exe].
2. On the "End User License Agreement" screen, click [Agree and Go to Next].

3. Select [Network], and then click [Next].



DZX731

5

- The search detects devices connected to the network.
- If the error screen is displayed, see page 112 "If the Machine Cannot Be Found".

4. Select this machine from among the detected devices, and then click [Next].



DOCZDM0202

Printer driver installation starts.

5. When the installation is complete, click [Finish].

Installing the Printer Driver for Windows

1. Download the driver, and then unzip the file.

2. Display the "Devices and Printers" screen.**Windows 10 (version 1703 or later)**

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Windows System] ► [Control Panel].
2. Click [View devices and printers].

Windows 10 (earlier than version 1703)

1. Right-click [Start], and then click [Control Panel].
2. Click [View devices and printers].

Windows 8.1

1. On the Charm Bar, click [Set] ► [Control Panel].
2. Click [View devices and printers].

Windows 7

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Devices and Printers].

3. Click [Add a printer].**4. Click [The printer that I want isn't listed].****5. Select [Add a local printer or network printer with manual settings], and then click [Next].****6. Select [Standard TCP/IP Port] on [Create a new port:], and then click [Next].****7. Enter the IP address of this machine in [Host Name or IP address].****8. Clear the [Query the printer and automatically select the driver to use] check box, and then click [Next].**

Searching for the TCP/IP port starts.

9. When the "Additional port information required" screen is displayed, select [RICOH Network Printer C model], and then click [Next].**10. Click [Have Disk...] ► [Browse...] to specify the driver (INF file), and then click [OK].**

The driver is stored in the [DISK1] folder in the folder that was created when unzipping the downloaded file.

11. Select a printer driver to install, and then click [Next].**12. Enter the printer name as necessary, and then click [Next].**

Printer driver installation starts.

13. Specify the printer as a shared printer as necessary, and then click [Next] ► [Finish].

If the Machine Cannot Be Found

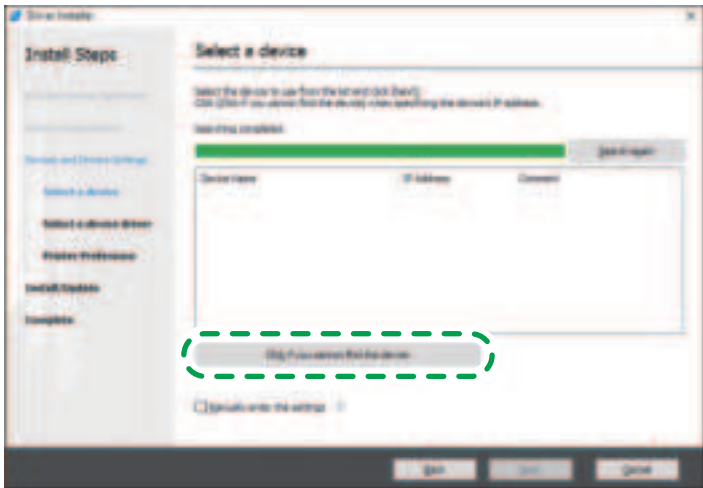
The "Network Connection Error" screen is displayed.



Confirm and perform ❶ to ❸, and then click [OK]. If the machine still cannot be found, specify the IP address or machine name to install the printer driver.

1. Click [Click if you cannot find the device].

5

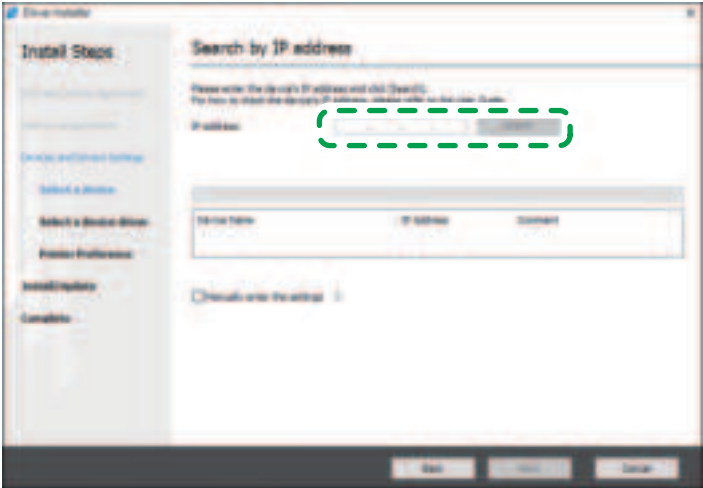


DZC089

2. Select [Specify device IP address] or [Specify device name], and then click [Next].

When specify the machine IP address

1. Enter the IP address of the machine and click [Search].



DZC091

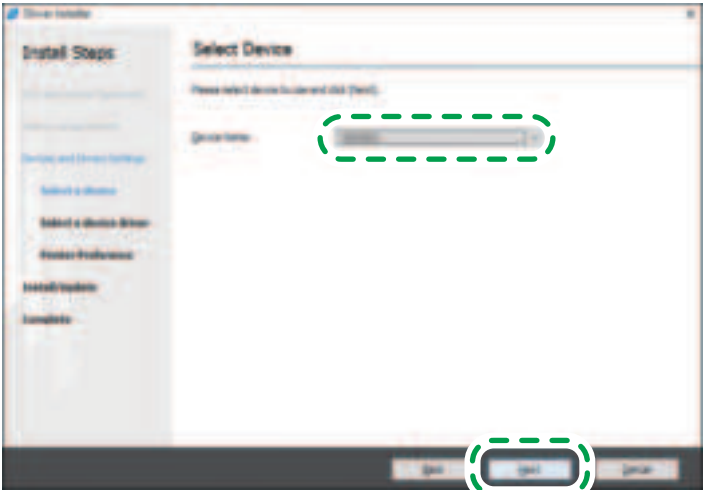
5

2. When the machine is detected, click [Next].

Printer driver installation starts.

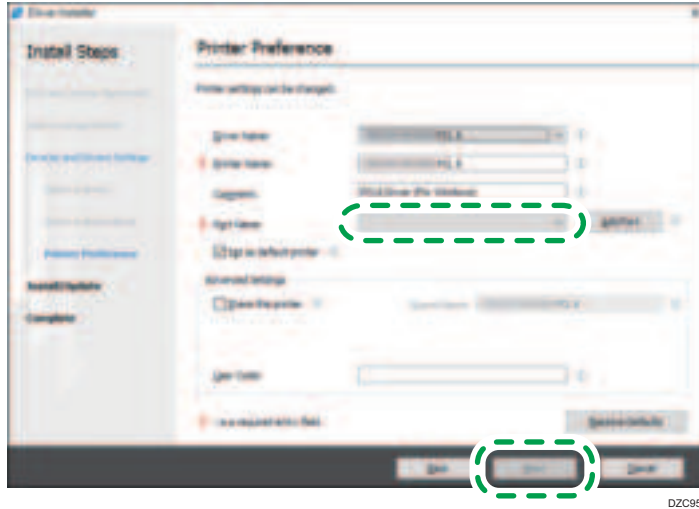
When specify the machine name

1. Select the machine to use, and then click [Next].



DZC094

2. On the "Printer Preference" screen, select one of the port names from among "Port Name", and then click [Next].



DZC950

Printer driver installation starts.

For details about the procedure for specifying the IP address after installing the printer driver, see the following section:

See "When You Cannot Print a Document even if the Printer Driver is Installed", User Guide (Full Version).

3. When the installation is complete, click [Finish].

Installing the Printer Driver for Network Connection (macOS)

Install the PPD file (printer driver) under macOS, and then register the machine on the computer from the system preferences.

★ Important

- You need an administrator name and a password (phrase). For details, consult your network administrator.
- For the latest information on the corresponding operating system, see the "Readme.htm" file, located on the CD-ROM root directory.

↓ Note

- Setting procedures using macOS 10.14 are shown as an example. The actual procedure may differ depending on the OS version you are using.

5

Installing the PPD file

1. Set the CD-ROM in the computer, and click [macOS] ► (brand name) to display the [macOS PPD Installer] folder.

To install the driver from the downloaded file, display the folder that is the location of the downloaded file.

2. Double-click the package file.

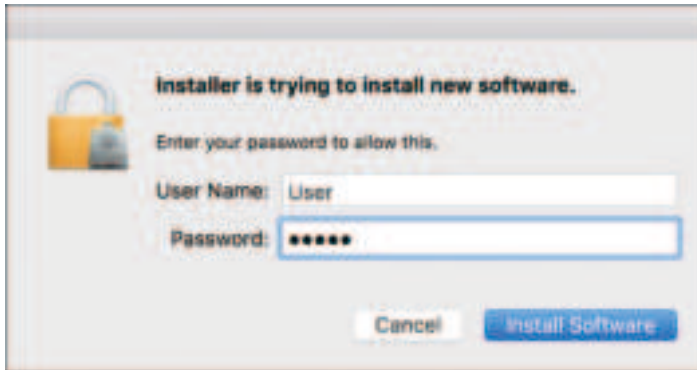


DZX684

To install from the CD-ROM, double-click the package file in the [macOS] ► (brand name) ► [macOS PPD Installer] folder.

3. On the "Introduction" screen, click [Continue].
4. On the "License" screen, click [Continue] and then click [Agree].
 - When prompted to select where to install the driver, specify the install location, and click [Continue].
5. Click [Install].

6. Enter the administrator's user name and password, and then click [Install Software].



The installation of the PPD file starts.

7. When the installation is complete, click [Close].

5

Registering the Machine in [Printers & Scanners]

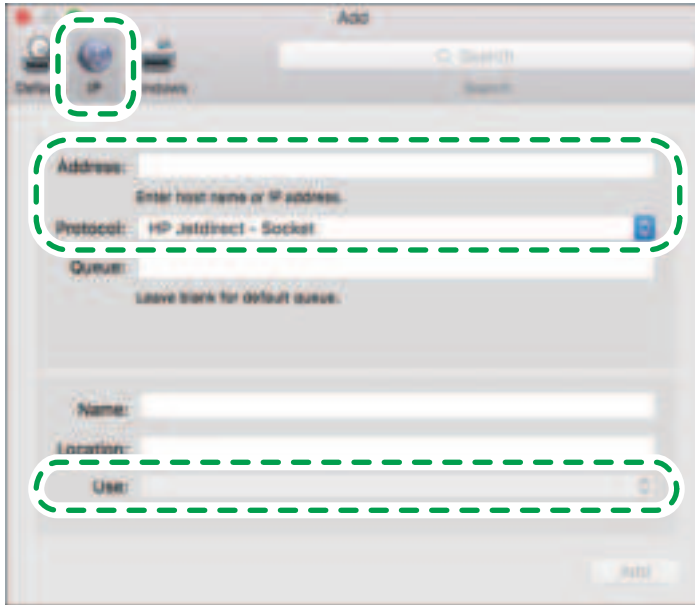
Register the PPD file of the machine in the system preferences to enable printing.

1. Select [System Preferences...] from the Apple menu.
2. Click [Printers & Scanners].
3. Click [+].



DZX689

4. Click [IP], and configure the information of the machine.



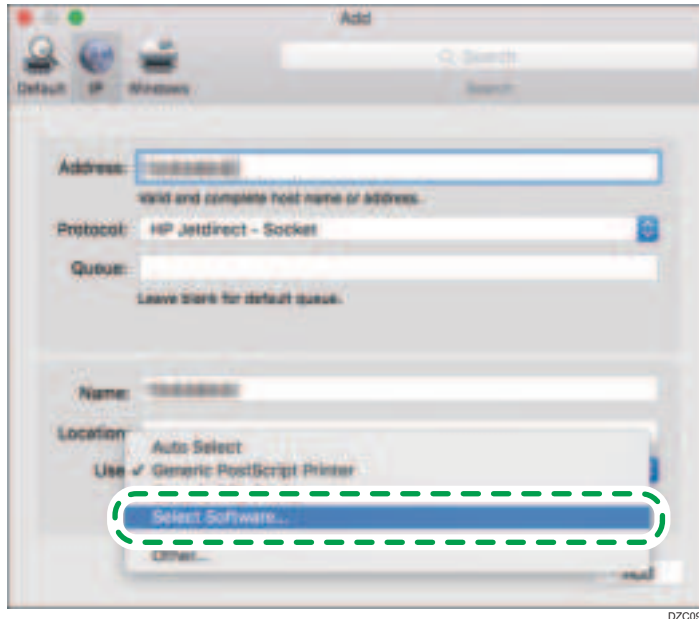
DZX690

- Address: Enter the IP address of the machine.
- Protocol: Select [Line Printer Daemon - LPD]. If the printer takes time to perform operations when using the [Line Printer Daemon - LPD] protocol, change the protocol to [HP Jetdirect - Socket].
- Use: Check that the machine name is displayed. If "Generic PostScript Printer" is displayed, the entered IP address may not be correct.

When "Generic PostScript Printer" is displayed even though the IP address is correct

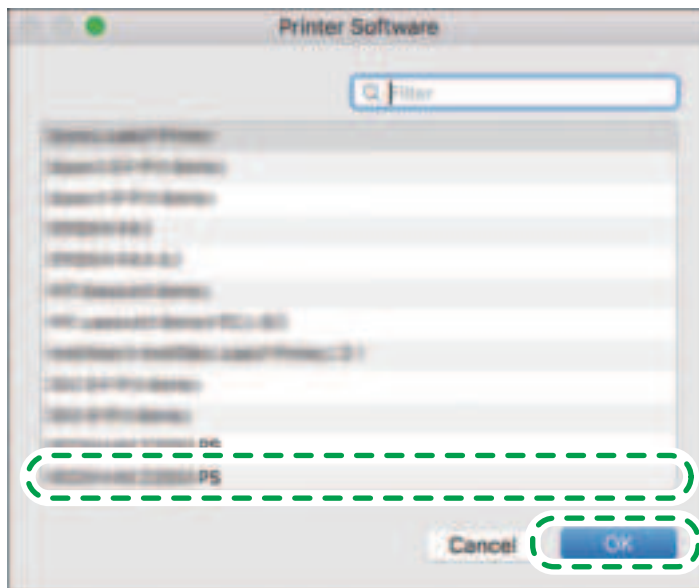
Perform the following procedure to select the PPD file of the machine:

1. Select [Select Software...] on "Use".



DZC098

2. Select the machine on the "Printer Software" screen, and then click [OK].



DZC099

5. Click [Add].

The progress screen is displayed.

- If the progress screen does not close after a while, click [Configure...] and configure the option configuration of the printer. For the procedure of the option configuration, see page 120 "Specifying the Option Settings".

6. Check that the machine name is added to the [Printers & Scanners] screen.



DOC9DA8351

5

7. Close the system preferences screen.

Specifying the Option Settings

If the option configuration of the machine is not automatically reflected, select the option installed on the machine in [Printers & Scanners].

1. Select [System Preferences...] from the Apple menu.
2. Click [Printers & Scanners].
3. Select the machine from the list, and then click [Options & Supplies...].



DOC9DA8352

4. Click [Options], select the option installed on the machine, and then click [OK].

- If the usable options are not displayed, the IP address has not been entered correctly or the PPD file has not been registered properly. To enter the IP address or register the PPD file, see page 117 "Registering the Machine in [Printers & Scanners]".

5. Close the system preferences screen.**↓ Note**

- If the option you want to select is not displayed, PPD files may not be set up correctly. To complete the setup, check the name of the PPD file displayed in the dialog box.
- Setting procedures using macOS 10.14 are shown as an example. The actual procedure may differ depending on the OS version you are using.
- To specify an optional Adobe PostScript when using a PostScript 3 printer driver, select [Adobe PostScript] in the "PostScript:" list on the [Options] tab.

Basic Procedure for Printing Documents

Specify the printer driver and configure the Document Size, Paper Type, and other settings to print a document.

★ Important

- Duplex printing is selected as the default setting. If you want to print on only one side, select [Off] for the two-sided printing setting.
- If you send a print job via USB 2.0 while the machine is in Sleep mode, an error message may appear after the print job is completed. In this case, check whether the document was printed.

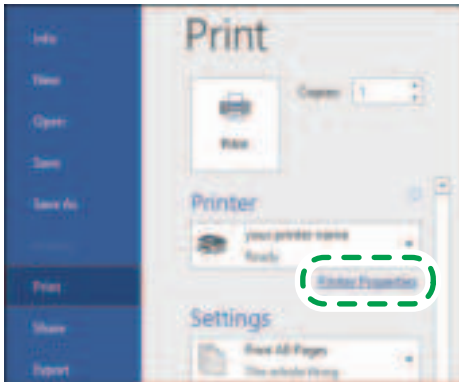
Printing a Document in Windows

5

1. Open a document to print on the computer, and display the setting screen of the printer driver from the print menu in the application.

The procedure to display a document varies depending on the applications.

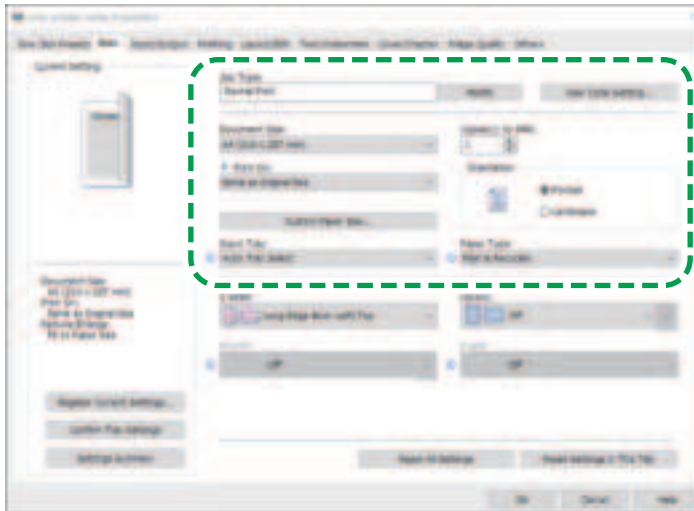
For example in Microsoft Word/Excel, click [Print] on the [File] menu, select the device to use, and then click [Printer Properties].



DZC420

2. Specify the Document Size, Paper Type, Input Tray, and other settings.

You can configure the basic settings just by using the [Basic] tab.



DOCZDM6553

5

- Job Type: Select [Normal Print] to execute printing immediately.

You can make a partial print as a test and proceed to print the rest of the document (Sample Print).

See "Making a Partial Print as a Test and Printing the Rest of the Document", User Guide (Full Version).

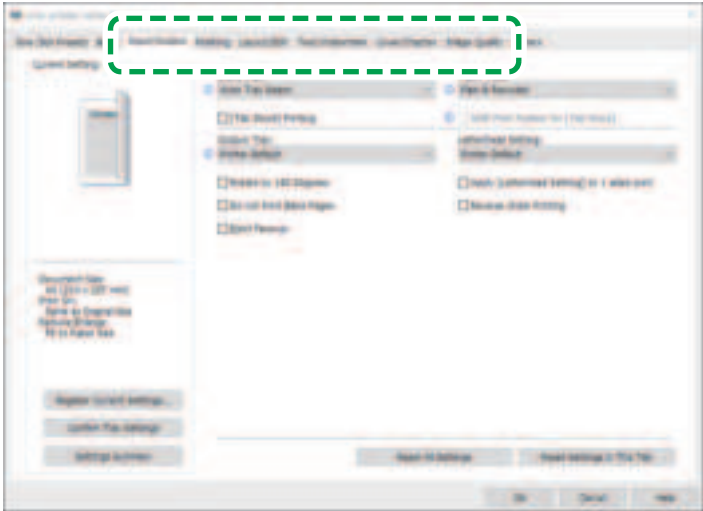
You can store documents in the machine (Locked Print, Hold Print, or Stored Print).

See "Storing Documents to Print in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

- Document Size: Select the size of the document to print.
- Print On: Select the size of the paper to print on.
- Copies: Enter the print quantity.
- Orientation: Specify the orientation of the document. Select Portrait or Landscape.
- Input Tray: Select the tray loaded with the paper to use. When you select [Auto Tray Select], a suitable paper tray is selected automatically according to the specified [Print On] and [Paper Type].
 - If you do not want to use particular trays when [Auto Tray Select] is specified, set the machine so it does not automatically select those trays.
 - To prevent the machine from selecting other trays automatically, disable auto tray switching.

See "Tray/Paper Settings", User Guide (Full Version).
- Paper Type: Select the type of paper to use.

You can configure some advanced settings using the [Input/Output] to [Image Quality] tabs.



DOCZDM6554

5

The caution icon (i) indicates that there are disabled items. Click the icon to check the cause. To set each function in details, click the detail settings button (⚙).

3. After completing the configuration, click [OK] to print.

↓ Note

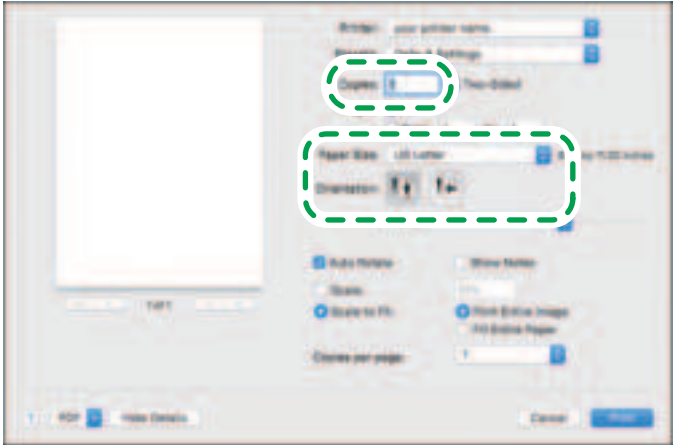
- On the [Devices and Printers] screen, right-click the printer icon of the machine, and then click [Printing preferences] to change the default values of the printer settings.
- When you use the driver distributed from the print server, [Standard settings] specified in the print server are displayed as the default.

Printing a Document in macOS

In the following example procedure, macOS 10.14 is used. The procedure may vary for different versions.

1. Open a document to print on the computer, and click [Print] on the [File] menu.
2. Select the printer you use from [Printer:].

3. Specify Paper Size, Orientation, and other settings.



D2C405

- Copies: Enter the print quantity.
- Paper Size: Select the size of the document to print.
- Orientation: Specify the orientation of the document. Select [Portrait] or [Landscape].

4. Select a category from the pop-up menu, and then specify the paper tray and paper type.



DOC9DA8201

Paper Feed

- All Pages From: Select the tray loaded with the paper to use. When you select [Auto Select], a suitable paper tray is selected automatically according to the specified paper size and paper type.

When the paper of the specified size is not loaded on the machine, printing is performed following the settings of the machine.

Printer Features

Select a category in "Feature Sets", and then specify the setting items.

- Paper

- Paper Type: Select the type of paper to use.
- Job Log
 - Job Type: Select [Normal Print] to execute printing immediately.
You can make a partial print as a test and proceed to print the rest of the document (Sample Print).
See "Making a Partial Print as a Test and Printing the Rest of the Document", User Guide (Full Version).
You can store documents in the machine (Locked Print, Hold Print, or Stored Print).
See "Storing Documents to Print in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

5. After completing the configuration, click [Print] to print.

Printing on Both Sides of Paper

Specify 2-sided Print in the printer driver.

Specifying 2-sided Print (Windows)

Specify 2-sided Print on the [Basic] tab.

- 1. Open a document to print on the computer, and display the setting screen of the printer driver from the print menu in the application.
- 2. Specify Document Size, Paper Type, Orientation and others.
page 122 "Basic Procedure for Printing Documents"
- 3. In [2 sided:] on the [Basic] tab, specify the binding side of and way to open the paper.

Orientation of the original and opening type

Orientation	Open to left	Open to top
Portrait 		
Landscape 		

- 4. After completing the configuration, click [OK] to print.

Specifying 2-sided Print (macOS)

Specify 2-sided Print on the [Layout] menu.

- 1. Open a document to print on the computer, and display the setting screen of the printer driver from the print menu in the application.
- 2. Specify Paper Size, Orientation, Paper Type, and other settings.
page 122 "Basic Procedure for Printing Documents"

3. Select the [Two-Sided] check box, and then select [Layout] to specify the binding side and opening type of the paper.

Orientation of the original and opening type

Long edge



Short edge



DZC442

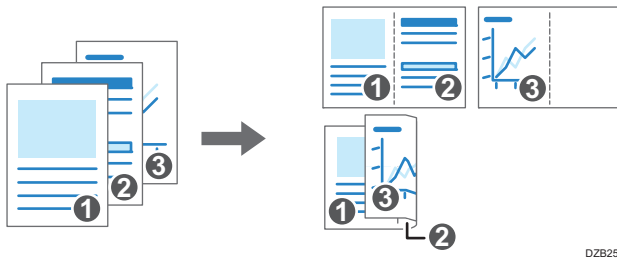
4. After completing the configuration, click [Print] to print.

Combining and Printing Multiple Pages on a Single Sheet of Paper

You can print multiple pages on a single sheet at a reduced size (Combine 2 Originals).

For example, you can reduce an original of A4 size to A5 size and print two pages on an A4 sheet. You can use the 2 Sided Print and Combine 2 Originals functions at the same time to economize on paper.

You can print up to 16 pages on a single sheet and specify the order to arrange the pages on the sheet.



5

Specifying the Combine 2 Originals Function (Windows)

Specify the Combine 2 Originals function on the [Basic] tab.

1. Open a document to print on the computer, and display the setting screen of the printer driver from the print menu in the application.
2. Specify Document Size, Paper Type, Orientation and other setting
page 122 "Basic Procedure for Printing Documents"
3. In [Layout:] on the [Basic] tab, specify the number of pages to combine.
Click the detail settings button of [Layout] to do the following settings:
 - Page Order: Select the order of the pages.
 - Draw Frame Border: Select the check box to draw a line between pages.
4. After completing the configuration, click [OK] to print.

When printing from an application that supports the same function as the machine, do not set the function in the application. If the setting in the application is enabled, the print result may not be as intended.

Specifying the Combine 2 Originals Function (macOS)

Specify the Combine 2 Originals function on the [Layout] menu.

1. Open a document to print on the computer, and display the setting screen of the printer driver from the print menu in the application.

2. Specify Paper Size, Orientation, Paper Type, and other settings.

page 122 "Basic Procedure for Printing Documents"

3. Select [Layout], and then specify the number of pages to combine and the order of the pages.

Configure the following settings:

- Pages per Sheet: Select the number of pages to combine.
- Layout Direction: Select the order of the pages.
- Border: Select a type of border line to draw between the pages.

4. After completing the configuration, click [Print] to print.

Printing Documents Stored in the Printer from the Control Panel

To print a document stored from the printer driver in the machine, perform the print operation on Quick Print Release of the control panel. The file administrator also can delete unneeded documents and unlock documents locked by entering an invalid password.

1. On the Home screen, press [Quick Print Release].



2. On the Quick Print Release screen, select the user ID used to store the document.

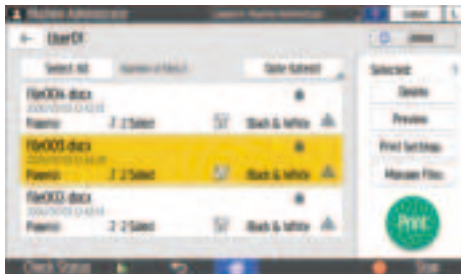
Enter the password when the Locked Print documents or the Stored Print documents protected by passwords are stored. The screen shows the documents corresponding to the entered password and the documents without passwords.

You can also use your smart device for authentication instead of entering the password.

See "Connecting a Mobile Device to the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

page 54 "Logging In from the Control Panel"

3. Select a document to print.



- Preview: The first page of the document is displayed. If you select multiple documents, the preview cannot be displayed. Preview cannot be displayed if the document was encrypted while storing it in the printer driver.
- Print Settings: Change the print settings for the selected document.

The following stored files cannot be changed: files automatically stored by [Store and Skip Errored Job] or [Restrict Direct Print Jobs], files encrypted by the printer driver, and files for which unauthorized copy prevention or Background Numbering has been specified.

See "Print Settings Configured on the Control Panel", User Guide (Full Version).

- **Manage Files...:** Change the print time of a Hold Print job or the password specified on the document. If you select multiple documents or encrypt the document to store in the printer driver, the item is disabled.

See "Encrypting the Document when Storing It", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Press [Print] twice.

Printing from a USB Flash Memory Device or SD Card Directly

You can connect a memory storage device to the media slot of the machine and print the files stored on it. Use this to print external data easily.

CAUTION

- Keep SD cards and USB flash memory devices out of reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows an SD card or USB flash memory device, consult a doctor immediately.

Note

- USB flash memory device and SD cards are supported for direct printing. However, certain types of USB flash memory device and SD cards cannot be used.
- The machine cannot print a document over 1 GB.
- You can select up to 100 files within 1 GB total.
- If the print job of PDF file is canceled, execute printing from a PDF viewer such as Acrobat Reader while using the printer driver.

5

Printable File Formats

File format	Details
JPEG files	Exif version 1.0 or later
TIFF files	Uncompressed TIFF files TIFF files compressed using the MH, MR, or MMR method
PDF files	PDF version 1.7 (Acrobat 8.0 compatible) or earlier ^{* 1}
XPS files	Possible for all XPS files

^{* 1} The machine does not support the following functions: Crypt Filter, DeviceN Color Space (more than eight components), watermark note, optional contents (version 1.6), AcroForm

Note

- The PDF file of a custom size may not be printed.

Printing from a Memory Storage Device or Scan Application

1. On the Home screen, press [Print/Scan (Memory Storage Device)]

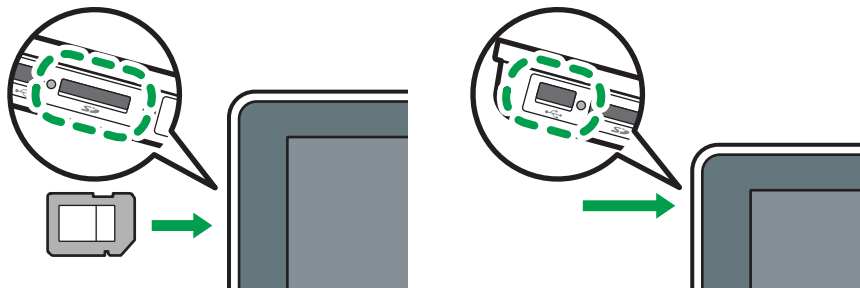


2. On the Print/Scan (Memory Storage Device) screen, press [Print from Storage Device]



DZX460

3. Insert a memory storage device in the media slot on the side of the control panel.



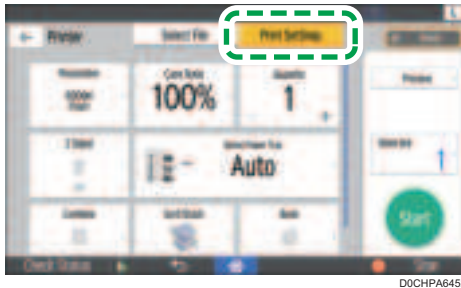
D0CMIC1307

4. Press [USB] or [SD Card].
5. Select the file to print.

Files in the external media are displayed as icons or thumbnail images.



6. Press [Print Settings] to specify the settings of 2-Sided Print or Finishing as necessary.



- Copy Ratio: Select whether to print in the original size or to reduce or enlarge to match the paper size.
- Quantity: Enter the print quantity.
- Resolution: Select the resolution of the image to print.
- Select Paper Tray: Select the paper tray.
- 2 Sided: Select the opening direction of the printed sheet.
- Combine: Select whether to combine multiple pages into a sheet.
- Sort/Stack: Select whether to print in ordered sets or in a batch page by page.
- Book: Select the opening direction of the Magazine binding. You can specify the setting of Magazine binding only when printing a file in the PDF/XPS format.
- Staple: Select the staple position.
- Punch: Select the punch position.
- Fold: Select the type of fold or printing side.

7. Press [Start] to start printing.

6. Scan

Scanning Documents and Sending the Scanned Data by E-mail

Scan a document and attach the scanned data to an e-mail and send it from the machine.

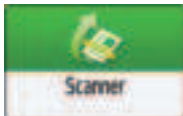
- Configure the SMTP server and network settings in advance.
See "Configuring the Settings to Send E-mails from the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).
- Register an e-mail address in the address book to select the address as the destination easily when sending an e-mail.
See "Registering E-mail Addresses in the Address Book", User Guide (Full Version).

Basic Procedure for Sending an E-mail

↓ Note

- This machine supports SMTPS (SMTP over SSL).
- This machine supports Web mail sending.
- To use Message Disposition Notification, log in to the machine as a user and specify the sender.
Note, however, that the [Reception Notice] notification e-mail may not be transmitted if the e-mail software of the recipient does not support Message Disposition Notification.
- If you press [Preview] and then start scanning, the Preview screen appears. You can use this screen to check how the originals are scanned and the scan setting used for scanning. After checking the preview, you can specify whether to send the file or not.
- See "Displaying a Preview Before Sending the Scanned Document", User Guide (Full Version).
- After an e-mail is sent, the destination, sender, subject, text, and file name fields will be automatically cleared. If you want to preserve the information in these fields, contact your local dealer.

1. Press [Scanner] on the Home screen.



2. Select [Scan to Email] on the scanner screen.



DOCZPM6701

3. Place the original on the scanner.

See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Press [Send Settings] on the scanner screen.



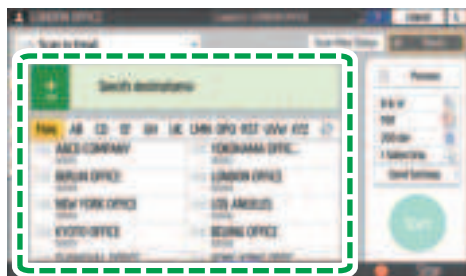
5. Press [Sender] and specify the sender.

- When a logged in user is operating the machine, the logged in user becomes the sender.
- When [On] is specified in [System Settings] ► [Send (Email/Folder)] ► [Email] ► [Auto Specify Sender Name], you can send an e-mail even when the sender is not specified. The administrator's e-mail address that is registered on the machine is used as the sender.
- Specify the sender to receive an opening confirmation.

6. Select the [Reception Notice] check box to receive an opening confirmation of the e-mail from the destination.

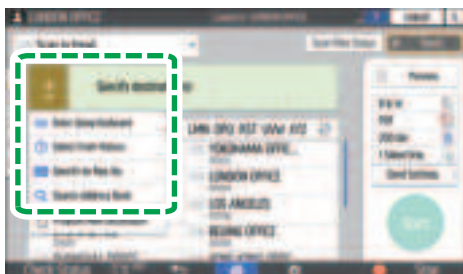


7. Specify the destination on the scanner screen.



DOCZPM6702

- To enter the e-mail address manually, select the destination from the destination history, or search for the destination in the address book, press , and specify the destination.



DOCZPM6703

- Press  to specify the destination again or select [To], [Cc] or [Bcc].



DOCZPM6704

Note

- You can specify multiple destinations.
- If the target destination does not appear, display the destination by selecting its initial letter from the title.
- Depending on the security setting, some destinations may not appear in the destination list.
- When the specified destination is updated using the Central Management function, the spooled documents are sent to the destination after updating.

8. Specify the scan settings according to the purpose of the scanned data.

page 153 "Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density"

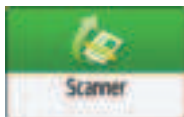
page 156 "Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document"

9. Press [Start].

Registering the E-mail Destination in the Address Book When Sending an E-mail

When specifying an e-mail address by entering it manually or selecting it from the scanner records, you can register the e-mail address in the address book before sending an e-mail.

1. Press [Scanner] on the Home screen.



2. Select [Scan to Email] on the scanner screen.



DOCZPM6701

3. Place the original on the scanner.

See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

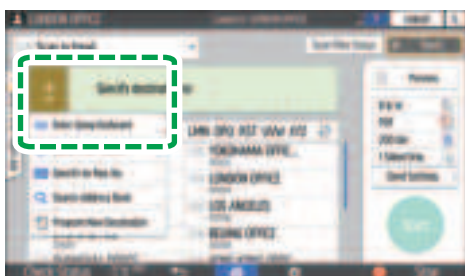
4. Press [Send Settings] on the scanner screen and configure the scan settings according to the purpose of the scanned data.

page 153 "Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density"

page 156 "Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document"

5. Specify the destination.

- When entering manually
 1. Press  and then select [Enter Using Keyboard].



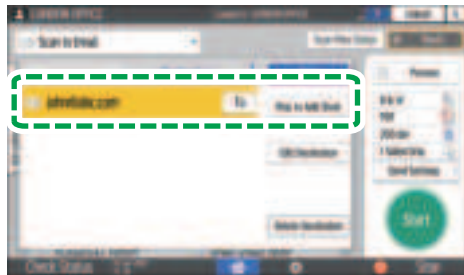
DOCZPM6705

2. Enter the e-mail address, and press .



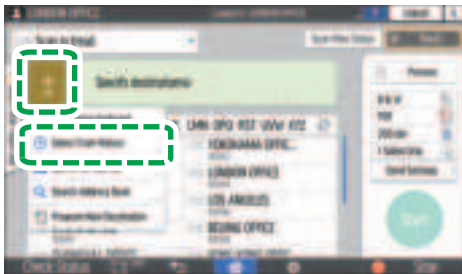
DOCZPM6706

3. Specify the e-mail address that was entered manually and press [Reg. to Add. Book].



DOCZPM6707

4. Enter the name and other additional information.
 - When selecting from the transmission history
 1. Press  and then select [Select from History].



DOCZPM6708

2. Press [Register] of the destination to register.
3. Register the name and other additional information.
6. Press [OK] to close the address book screen after registering the information.
7. Press [Start] on the scanner screen.

Scanning Documents and Sending the Scanned Data to a Folder

To send the data of a scanned original to a shared folder on a computer, create the shared folder on the computer in advance and register the destination folder in the address book.

- You also need to configure the settings for connecting to the network from the machine.
See "Connecting to a Wired LAN", User Guide (Full Version).
See "Connecting to a Wireless LAN", User Guide (Full Version).
- You can add a folder destination in the address book easily using Scan to Folder Helper.
See "Specifying the Destination of Send to Folder Using the Scan to Folder Helper App", User Guide (Full Version).

Note

- Using the SMB 3.0 protocol, you can save a file in the folder that was configured individually to apply encryption.
- The scanned file can be also saved to an FTP server.
- See "Registering the Destination Folder to Use for Send to Folder", User Guide (Full Version).

Confirming the Computer Information (Windows)

Confirm the name, IP address, and other information of the computer used to create a shared folder, and write down the information on the check list.

1. Print the check sheet.

See "Printing the Check Sheet", User Guide (Full Version).

2. Click [Start] on the computer and click [Windows System] ► [Command Prompt].

3. Enter "ipconfig/all" and press the [Enter] key.

4. Check the computer name, enable/disable status of the DHCP server and IP address, and write down the information in [1] on the check sheet.



DZC501

When the screen shown above is displayed, fill in the sheet as follow:

[1]	Computer name	LAPTOP-5955S09U
	DHCP server enable/disable setting	No
	IP address	192.168.0.152

DZC523

5. Enter "set user" and press the [Enter] key.
Enter a space between "set" and "user".
6. Check the domain name, workgroup name and login user name, and write down the information in [2] on the check sheet.



CKX007

When the screen shown above is displayed, fill in the sheet as follow:

[2]	Domain name/workgroup name	USERDNSDOMAIN [abcd-net.local] USERDOMAIN [ABCD-NET]
	Computer login user name	TYamada

DZC524

"USERDNSDOMAIN" is not displayed when the login user who executed the command is a local user.

7. Check the login password on the computer, and write down the information in [3] on the check sheet.

The required information on the computer is confirmed. Now create a shared folder on your computer and specify the access permissions of the folder.

↓ Note

- Depending on the operating system or security settings, it might be possible to specify a user name that does not have a password assigned. However, we recommend that for greater security you select a user name that has a password.

Creating a Shared Folder (Windows)

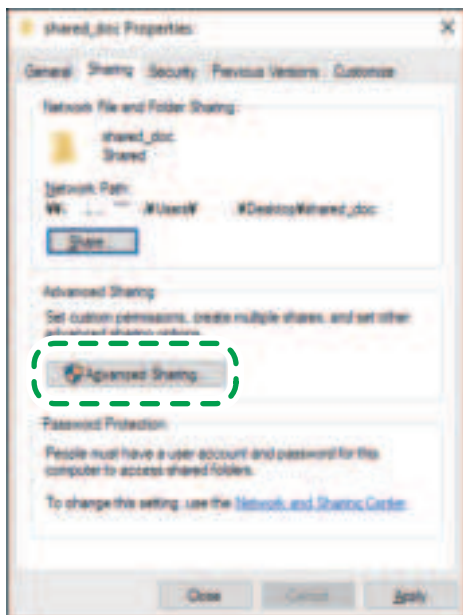
Create a shared folder on the Windows Desktop and specify the access permissions of the folder.

↓ Note

- If you are creating a shared folder for the first time on this computer, you must enable the file sharing function. For details, see Windows Help.
- To register a shared folder in the machine's address book, you need the computer's IP address or computer name, and the user name and password of a user who has access permissions for the shared folder.

- 1. Log on to Windows as a user with administrative privileges.**
- 2. Create a new folder in Windows Explorer and write down the folder name in [4] on the check sheet.**
- 3. Right-click the created folder, and then click [Properties].**

4. On the [Sharing] tab, click [Advanced Sharing].

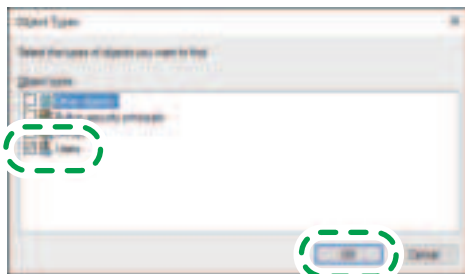


DZC318

5. Select the [Share this folder] check box, and then click [Permissions].

After completing the procedure, remove Everyone (unspecified user), and then add a user allowed access the folder. The user whose information is written down on the check sheet is used in the example shown below.

6. Select [Everyone] under [Group or user names], and then click [Remove].
7. Click [Add] ► [Advanced] ► [Object Types].
8. Select [Users], and then click [OK].



DZC319

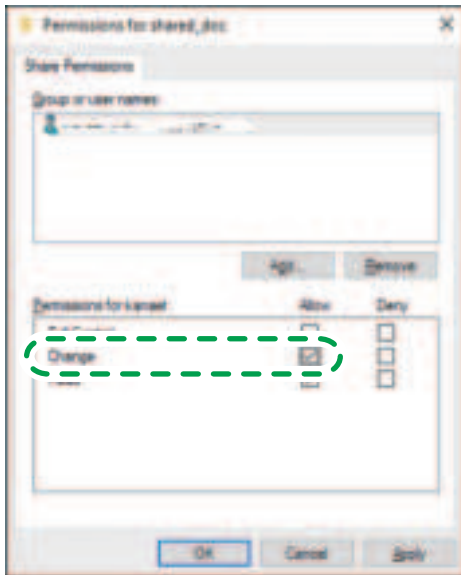
9. Click [Locations], select the name of the domain or work group the user belongs to ([2] on the check sheet) and then click [OK].
10. Click [Find Now].

11. From the Search results, select the login user name of the computer to be added ([2] on the check sheet) and then click [OK].

When you cannot find a specific user, click [Columns], or right-click the [Search results] field, select [Select Column], and then add [Logon Name] or [Logon Name (pre-Windows 2000)] from the [Available columns] list.

12. Click [OK].

13. Select the added user, and then select the [Allow] check box under [Permissions].



DZC320

14. Click [OK] to close all windows.

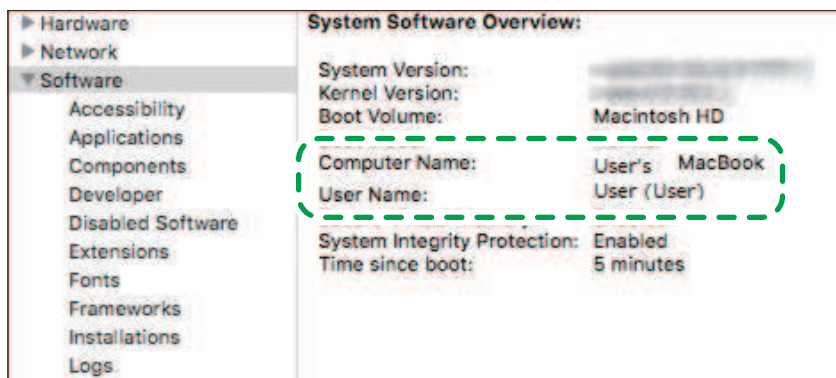
The access permissions on the folder have been successfully configured. If you want to specify access permissions for the folder to allow other users or groups to access the folder, configure the folder as follows:

1. Right-click the created folder and then click [Properties].
2. Click [Edit...] on the [Security] tab.
3. Click [Add] ► [Advanced].
4. Select [Object Types] or [Locations] and click [Find Now].
5. Select the user or group to assign permissions and click [OK].
6. Click [OK].
7. Select the added user, and then select the [Allow] check box under [Permissions].
8. Click [OK] to close all windows.

Confirming the Computer Information (macOS)

Confirm the name of the computer used to create the shared folder, login user name and other settings and write down the information on the check list.

1. Log on to macOS as a user with administrative privileges.
2. Click the Apple menu.
3. Click [About This Mac].
4. Click [System Report].
5. Click [Software] on the left pane and write down the displayed computer name in [1] and the user name in [2] on the check sheet.



DZC525

When the screen shown above is displayed, fill in the sheet as follow:

[1]	Computer name	User's MacBook
[2]	Computer login user name	User

DZC526

6. Click the Apple menu and select [System Preferences].
7. In [Network], click [Ethernet] or [Wi-Fi] and write down the displayed IP address in [1] on the check sheet.

The required information on the computer is configured. Now create a shared folder.

Note

- Depending on the operating system or security settings, you might be able to specify a user name that does not have a password assigned. However, we recommend that you select a user name that has a password.

Creating a Shared Folder (macOS)

Create a shared folder and specify the access permissions of the folder.

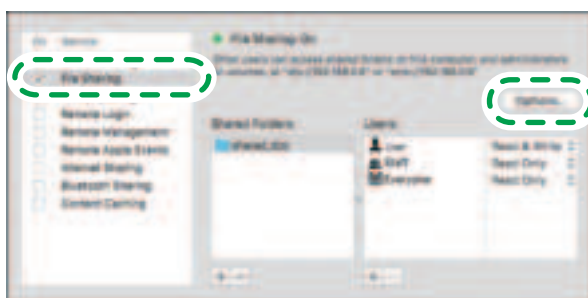
1. Print the check sheet.

See "Printing the Check Sheet", User Guide (Full Version).

2. Create a new folder and write down the folder name in [4] on the check sheet.

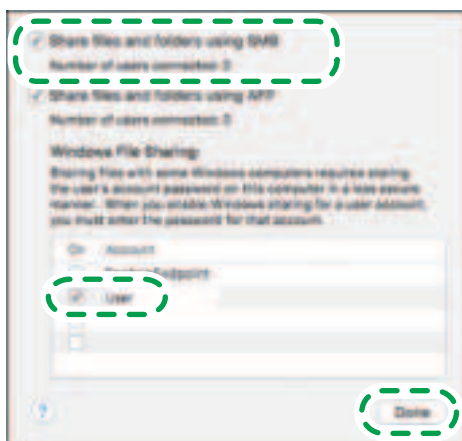
3. Click the Apple menu and select [System Preferences].

4. Click [Sharing], select the [File Sharing] check box and then click [Options].



DZC527

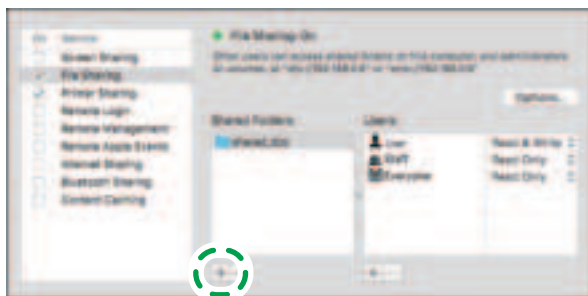
5. Select the check boxes of [Share files and folders using SMB] and the user account to use for file sharing and then click [Done].



DZC528

When the [Authentication] screen is displayed, enter the password of the selected account and then click [Done].

- Click **[+]** below **[Shared Folders]** on the **[Sharing]** screen.



DZC529

- Specify the folder created in Step 1 and click **[Add]**.
- Select the folder added in Step 6 and confirm that the permission of the user to access the folder is set to "Read & Write".



DZC530

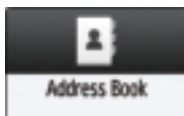
Note

- To register a shared folder in the machine's address book, you need the computer's IP address, and the user name and password of a user who has access permissions for the shared folder.

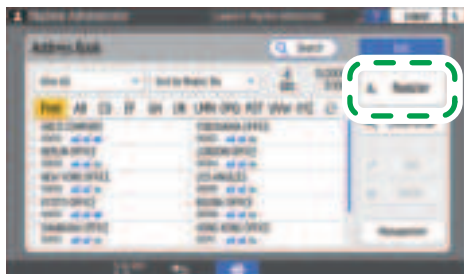
Registering the Created Shared Folder in the Address Book

This section describes the procedure for registering a shared folder created in Windows using the information on the check sheet as an example.

- Press **[Address Book]** on the Home screen.

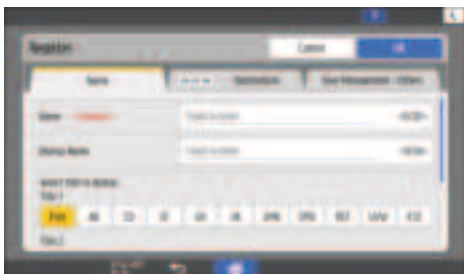


2. Press [Register] on the address book screen.



EDN022

3. Enter the information of the destination in the input boxes displayed on the [Name] tab, and select the title to classify the destination.



6

4. Press the [Destinations] tab, and then press [Folder].
5. Select [SMB (Send to Shared Folder on PC)] in [Protocol].
6. Specify the network path to the shared folder in "Path".

Entering the path name manually

If the computer name is "YamadaPC" ([1] on the check sheet) and the shared folder name is "shared_doc" ([4]), enter as follows:

\\YamadaPC\shared_doc

Selecting a folder from the list

Enter the IP address or host name of the computer on which to search for a shared folder, press [Browse Network], and then select the destination folder.

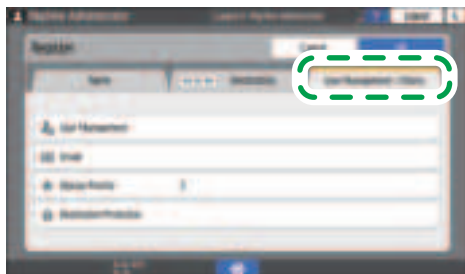
7. Under [Folder Authentication Info], select [Specify Other Authentication Information] and then enter the name and password of the login user who will access the shared folder.
8. Press [Connection Test] ► [Exit].

When no connection is established, check the message that appears.

page 265 "When a Message Appears While Using the Scanner Function"

9. Press [OK].

10. If necessary, press the [User Management / Others] tab and specify the settings.



DZC131

11. Press [OK].

12. Press [Home] (🏠) after specifying the settings.

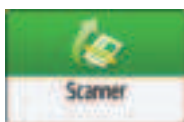
↓ Note

- The connection test may take time.
- Even if the connection test was successful, the machine may fail to transfer the file if you do not have write privileges for the file or there is not enough free hard disk space.
- If the client computer has a fixed IP address assigned to it, you can specify the IP address manually by including it in the path name of the destination folder. For example, if the IP address is "192.168.1.191" and the shared folder name is "user", enter "\\192.168.1.191\user" as the path.
- When the specified destination is updated using the Central Management function, the spooled documents are sent to the destination after updating.

6

Basic Procedure for Performing Send to Folder

1. Press [Scanner] on the Home screen.



2. Select [To Folder] on the scanner screen.



DOCZPM6709

3. Place the original on the scanner.

See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

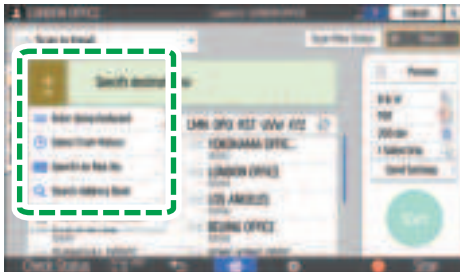
4. Press [Send Settings] and configure the scan settings according to the purpose of the scanned data.



page 153 "Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density"

page 156 "Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document"

5. Press , select [Search Address Book] or [Specify by Reg. No.] and then specify the shared folder that is registered in the address book.



DOCZPM6710

- To enter the information manually, press , and select [Manual Entry]. Select SMB as the protocol and enter the required information.
- To specify the destination again, press .

6. Press [Start].

Note

- If any of the machine's security functions are enabled, select the destination from the registered folder only when you send files by Scan to Folder.
- If the firewall of an antivirus program is active, you may not be able to specify a shared folder on the computer as a folder destination. If this is the case, see the antivirus program's Help.
- If Windows firewall is active and you cannot specify a shared folder on the computer as a folder destination, the machine may be able to communicate with the computer by changing the exceptions of the Windows firewall. For details, see Windows Help.
- After scan files are sent, the destination and file name fields will be automatically cleared. If you want to preserve the information in these fields, contact your local dealer.
- When the specified destination is updated using the Central Management function, the spooled documents are sent to the destination after updating.

Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density

Specify the quality and density to scan on the [Send Settings] screen.

1. Press [Scanner] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original on the scanner.

See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

3. Press [Send Settings] on the scanner screen and specify the original type (quality), density and resolution.

When specifying the original type



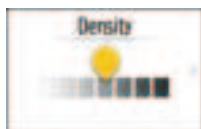
Original Type	Appropriate for
Black & White: Text	A document mainly composed of text in black and white. The original is scanned in two tones of black and white. • Dropout Color The machine scans the original while erasing the specified color (Chromatic Color, Red, Green, Blue). To specify a color to erase more precisely, move  toward [Narrow] in the color range to erase.
Black & White: Text / Photo	A document with text and photos in black and white. The original is scanned in two tones of black and white.
Black & White: Text / Line Art	A document with text and figures in black and white. The original is scanned in two tones of black and white.
Black & White: Photo	A document with figures and photos in black and white. The original is scanned in two tones of black and white.
Gray Scale	A document with figures and photos in black and white. The original is scanned as an image comprising many shades of gray.

Original Type	Appropriate for
Full Color: Text / Photo	A document mainly comprising text in color.
Full Color: Glossy Photo	An original in color such as silver-halide prints or pictures.
Full Color: Shiny Materials	A glossy original in color such as a precious metal or jewelry.
Auto Color Select	The machine determines the type of the original automatically while scanning. It may not be determined correctly depending on the scan settings and original content.

- You can select only [Gray Scale], [Full Color: Text / Photo], [Full Color: Glossy Photo], or [Full Color: Shiny Materials] when [High Compression PDF] as the [File Type].
page 156 "Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document"
- If you select the original type not compatible with the file format specified in [File Type], a message suggesting you to change the file type or original type is displayed. In this case, select a file type or original type from those suggested in the message.

6

When adjusting the density



- Move  to the left or right to adjust the density. The colors in the scanned image darken as you move the slider to the right.
- Select the [Auto Density] check box to adjust the density automatically when scanning an original with a non-white background such as newspaper or a document that has show-through.
- You can specify the shading level in [Scanner Settings] ► [Scan] ► [Color/Density] ► [Background Density of ADS (Full Color)].

When specifying the resolution



- Select the resolution to use for scanning the original. Image quality improves as the resolution increases, but the size of the scanned data also increases.
- To ensure the quality of scanned data, [100 dpi] or [150 dpi] cannot be selected in the following cases:

- [High Compression PDF] is specified in [File Type]
page 156 "Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document"
 - PDF is selected in [File Type] and OCR setting is specified
See "Scanning an Original as a PDF File with Embedded Text Data", User Guide (Full Version).
4. **To send the scanned document to an e-mail address, press [Sender] and then specify the sender.**
 5. **Specify the destination on the scanner screen, and press [Start].**

Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document

Specify the settings in [Send Settings] on the scanner screen.

1. Press [Scanner] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original on the scanner.

See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

3. Press [Send Settings] on the scanner screen.



4. Press [File Type], and select the file type to save the scanned document.

Press [Others] to display the detailed settings screen.



File Type	Description
PDF	Creates a standard PDF file.
High Compression PDF	You can reduce the data size without affecting text legibility.
PDF/A	This is an international standard suitable for long-term data storage.
TIFF	This image file format is suitable for black-and-white text and lines.
JPEG	This image file format is suitable for photos and images with subtle gradations.

- You can select from the following file types:

- Single Page: PDF, High Compression PDF, PDF/A, TIFF, JPEG

If you select a single-page file type when scanning multiple originals, one file is created for each single page and the number of files sent is the same as the number of pages scanned.

- Multi-page: PDF, High Compression PDF, PDF/A, TIFF

If you select a multi-page file type when scan multiple originals, scanned pages are combined and sent as a single file.

- Selectable file types differ depending on the scan settings and other conditions. For details about file types, see page 158 "Notes about and limitations of file types".

5. To specify the file name, press [File Name] and enter the file name.

The file name is generated by combining the following three items:



- File Name: Enter the string to use at the beginning of the file name.
- Start Number: Specify the starting number of a serial number that will be appended at the end of each file name when specifying a file format comprising a single page per file.
- Add Date & Time: Select this check box to add the "year, month, day, hour, and minute" the scanning is performed at the end of the file name.

6. Specify the scan settings according to the purpose of the scanned data.

page 153 "Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density"

7. Specify the destination on the scanner screen, and press [Start].

↓ Note

- You can also embed the security and digital signature settings, and text information in the PDF file.
- See "Scanning an Original as a PDF with Security Setting Specified", User Guide (Full Version).
- See "Scanning an Original as a PDF File with Embedded Text Data", User Guide (Full Version).
- You can change the number of digits in [Scanner Settings] ► [Sending Settings] ► [File Name] ► [Number of Digits for Single Page Files].
- The version of the created PDF files is 1.4/1.5.

Notes about and limitations of file types

Depending on the file format you select, the following limitations will apply:

TIFF

If you select TIFF as the file format, the data is not compressed and thus results in larger files.

High Compression PDF

You cannot select [High Compression PDF] in the following cases:

- When "Available Functions" of "Scanner Function" is set to [Black & White Only] in [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Function Restriction] ► [Restrict Functions of Each Application].
- If [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [File Management] ► [PDF File Type: PDF/A Fixed] is set to [On].
- Adobe Acrobat Reader 5.0/Adobe Reader 6.0 and later versions support High Compression PDF.
- When [High Compression PDF] is selected as the file type for scanning, areas of uneven density may appear in the scan file. If this happens, change the PDF File setting to [PDF/A] or [PDF].

7. Document Server

Storing Documents in Document Server

You can store documents scanned by the machine in the document server.

You can also store them using the printer driver.

See "Storing Documents to Print in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

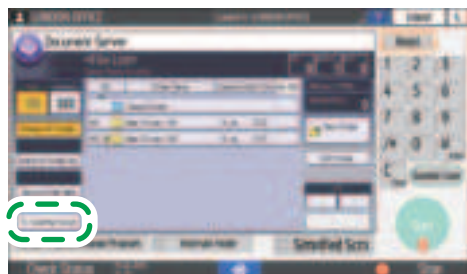
★ Important

- Documents stored in the document server are deleted after three days (72 hours) in the factory-default configuration. Change the settings in [Auto Delete File in Document Server] to change the period until documents are deleted or to specify not to delete documents automatically.
- See "Changing the Storage Period of Document Server or Specifying an Indefinite Period", User Guide (Full Version).

1. On the Home screen, press [Document Server].

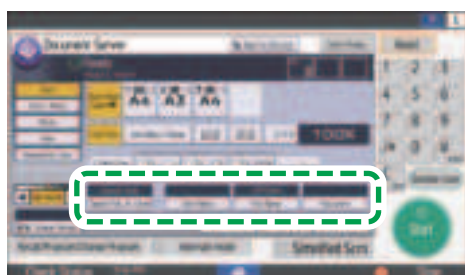


2. On the document server screen, press [To Scanning Screen].



DZX233

3. Specify the folder to store documents, the document name, and other settings.



DOCZPM6653

- **Target Fldr. to Store:** Select the "Shared Folder" created in the factory default configuration or a user folder created by a user to store the document. To select a user folder, create it in advance.

See "Organizing Document Server Using Folders", User Guide (Full Version).

- **User Name:** Specify the user name displayed as the owner of the document. Select a user from the address book or enter the name.
- **File Name:** Specify the name of the scanned document. If you do not specify the file name, a name such as "COPY0001" or "COPY0002" is assigned automatically.
- **Password:** Specify the password required for printing the document.

4. Place the original.

Place the original in the same way as in the Copy function.

See "Basic Procedure for Copying Documents", User Guide (Full Version).

5. Specify the scanning conditions such as size.

6. Press [Start].

- When you place the original on the Auto Document Feeder (ADF), the folder list screen is displayed after scanning the original.
- When you place the original on the exposure glass, press [Finish Scanning] after scanning all originals to print to display the folder list screen.

↓ Note

- The machine stores the documents with the size and orientation specified for the tray you selected, regardless of the actual size or orientation of the original.
- You can specify whether to allow other users to read or edit the stored document.
- See "Accessing Documents in Document Server from a Web Browser", User Guide (Full Version).
- When you do not want to delete stored documents, specify [Auto Delete File in Document Server] to [Off], and then store the documents. When [Specify Days] or [Specify Hours] is selected after documents have been stored, the documents will not be deleted. Only the documents stored after a setting change are deleted automatically.

Printing Documents in Document Server

You can print the documents stored in the document server with the same settings, paper size and other settings specified when the documents were scanned. You can also change the print settings or specify a page to print.

Note

- You can print a document in the document server using Web Image Monitor.
- See "Accessing Documents in Document Server from a Web Browser", User Guide (Full Version).

Printing a Document with the Settings Specified When Scanned

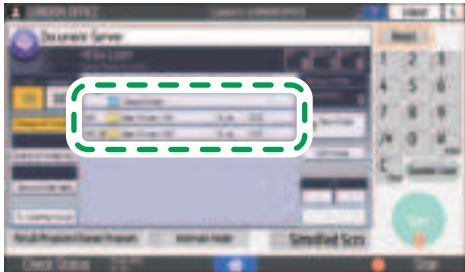
Important

- When printing two or more documents at a time, the print settings specified for the first document are applied to all the remaining documents.
- Some of the selected documents may not be printed due to the difference in the size or resolution.

1. On the Home screen, press [Document Server].



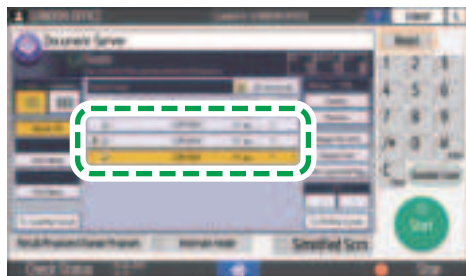
2. On the document server screen, select the desired folder.



DZX236

Press [Search by Folder No.] or [Search by Folder Name] to search for a folder.

3. Select the document to print.



DOCZPM6656

- Press [User Name] or [File Name] on the left side of the screen to search for a document.
- If the document is password protected, enter the password and press [OK].
- To print two or more copies, enter the quantity using the number keys.
- To print multiple documents at once, select the documents to print in the printing order. You can select up to 30 documents.
- After selecting the documents, you can confirm the selected documents by pressing [Order] to list them in the printing order.

4. Press [Start].

↓ Note

- To stop printing, press [Stop] ► [Cancel Printing].
- You can change the number of sets during printing. This function can be used only when the Sort function is selected in the printing conditions. To change the quantity while printing is in progress, press [Stop], enter the quantity, and then press [Resume Printing]. The quantity you can enter differs depending on when you press [Stop].

Changing the Print Settings to Print a Document

★ Important

- When you select two or more documents to change the print settings, the first document keeps the changed contents after printing. The second document and later documents do not keep the changed contents and instead keep the settings of when they were stored.

1. On the Home screen, press [Document Server].



2. On the document server screen, select the desired folder.

3. Select the document to print.

- If the document is password protected, enter the password and press [OK].
- To print two or more copies, enter the quantity using the number keys.

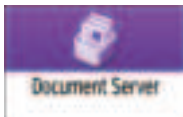
4. Press [To Printing Screen].**5. Change the print settings.**

- When specifying Sort, you can make a partial print as a test and proceed to print the rest of the quantity by pressing [Sample Copy].
- Press [Back to File List] to return to the screen for selecting documents.

6. Press [Start].

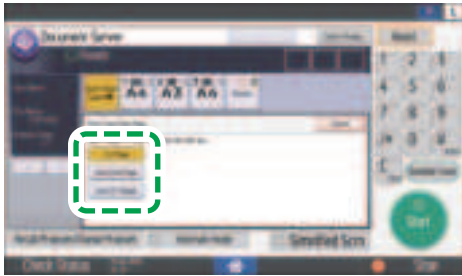
Specifying a Page to Print

7

1. On the Home screen, press [Document Server].**2. On the document server screen, select the desired folder.****3. Select the document to print and press [Print Specified Page].**

- If the document is password protected, enter the password and press [OK].
- To print two or more copies, enter the quantity using the number keys.

4. Specify the page to print.



DOCZPM6659

- 1st Page: Select this to print the first page only. When you selected two or more documents, the first page of each document is printed.
- Specified Page: Select this to print the specified page.
- Specify Range: Enter the page printing starts in [Start Number] and the page printing ends in [End Number].

5. Press [Start].

8. Web Image Monitor

Using Web Image Monitor

Web Image Monitor is a screen to confirm the machine status and settings on the computer.

When the machine and a computer can be connected to a network, you can access to Web Image Monitor by entering the IP address of the machine on the address bar of the Web browser.

Accessing to Web Image Monitor

1. Enter the IP address of the machine in the address bar of the Web browser.



Example: when the IP address of the machine is "192.168.1.10"

- If SSL is specified
https://192.168.1.10/
- If SSL is not specified
http://192.168.1.10/

When you do not know whether SSL is specified on the machine, enter the address starting with https. When you fail the connection, enter the address starting with http.

When entering the IPv4 address, do not enter "0" for each segment. If "192.168.001.010" is entered, you cannot access the machine.

2. Confirming the machine status or settings on the top page of Web Image Monitor.



DOCZAM1328

The machine status and remaining amount of consumables are displayed.

You can access Web Image Monitor more quickly by registering the machine's URL as a bookmark. Note that the URL you register must be the URL of the top page, which is the page that appears before login. If you register the URL of a page that appears after login, Web Image Monitor will not open properly from the bookmark.

To change the settings, click [Login] at the top right on the screen and enter the User Name and Password.

Recommended Web Browser

Windows	macOS
Internet Explorer 11 or later	Safari 3.0 or later
Firefox 52 or later	Firefox 52 or later
Google Chrome version 50 or later	Google Chrome version 50 or later
Microsoft Edge 20 or later	-

- You can use the screen reader software JAWS 7.0 or later on Internet Explorer.

Note

- When you use a DNS server or WINS server, you can use Host Name instead of IP address to connect the server.
- When the screen is distorted or the operation is unstable, confirm that "JavaScript" or "Use Cookies" is specified to Active on the computer.
- When using Host Name under Windows Server 2008 or later in the IPv6 environment, resolve Host Name in the external DNS server. You cannot use the host file.
- When specifying the settings from Web Image Monitor, do not log in to the machine from the control panel. The setting value may not be reflected.
- If you are using a proxy server, change the web browser settings so that no data goes through the proxy server to connect to this machine. Contact your administrator for information about the settings.
- If you click your browser's back button but the previous page does not appear, click the browser's refresh button and try again.

What You Can Do on the Web Image Monitor

Items displayed on the Web Image Monitor and settings depend whether the machine is logged in.

- When not logged in

The machine status, settings, and job status are displayed. You can browse the settings of the machine but cannot change them.

- When logged in (as a user)

Log in as a user registered in the Address Book. The users can operate the jobs that they executed and change a part of settings of the machine.

- When logged in (as an Administrator)

The administrator can change all settings of the machine.

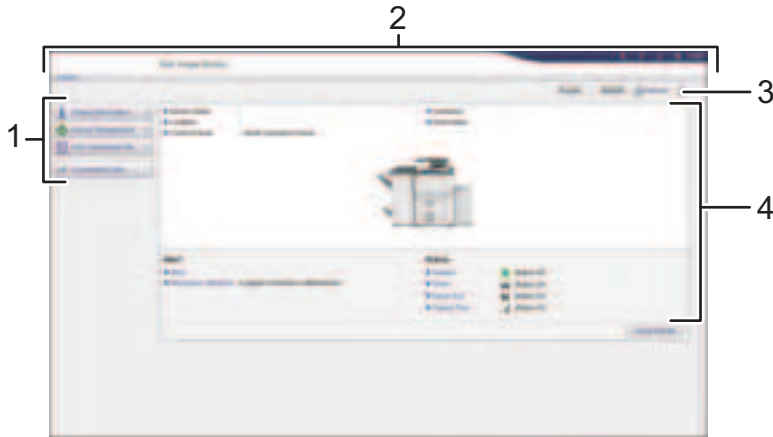
What you can do

Function	Not logged in	User	Administrator
Machine status	✓	✓	✓
Machine settings	✓*1	✓*1	✓
Machine setting change	-	✓*1	✓
Job list	✓	✓	✓
Job history	✓	✓	✓
Access to Address Book	-	✓	✓
File operation in Document Server	-	✓	✓
Network settings	-	✓*1	✓
Network settings change	-	✓*1	✓
Cancel printing	-	-	✓
Security settings	-	-	✓

✓: Available -: Not available

*1 Depending on the Administrator settings

Web Image Monitor Screen



D0CZPM1329

1. Menu

Menu items described below are displayed.

- Status/Information: Displays the machine status, option configuration, counter, and job status.
- Device Management: Manages the machine settings and Address Book.
- Print Job/Stored File: Operates the files stored in the printer driver or document server.
- Convenient Links: Displays the link to the Favorite URL.

2. Header

An icon to link to the Login screen is placed at the top right on the screen. The Help, Version Information, and Keyword Search buttons are also displayed.

3. Refresh/Help

 (Refresh): Update the information in the work area.

 (Help): View or download Help file contents.

4. Main Area

The machine status and settings are displayed.

Specifying Web Image Monitor Help

Web Image Monitor has Help to describe the function of setting items. When you use Help for the first time, you can select to read online Help or to download Help File.

View Online Help Now

You can view the latest Web Image Monitor Help on the Internet.

Download Help File

You can download Web Image Monitor Help to the computer and view it. When you store the downloaded Help file in the Web server and assign to the Help button ( ), you can view the Help without connecting to the Internet.

To assign the downloaded Help file to the Help button ( ), specify the path to the Help file following the procedure below.

1. Log in to Web Image Monitor as an Administrator.
2. Click [Configuration] on the "Device Management" menu on Web Image Monitor.



DOCZAM1311

3. Click [Webpage] under the "Webpage" category.
4. In "Download Help File", select the operating system and displayed language, and then click [Download].
5. Unzip the downloaded zip file and store it in the Web server.
6. Enter the path to the Help file stored in the Web server in "URL" under "Set Help URL Target".
For example, when URL of the Help File is "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/JA/index.html", enter "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/".
7. Click [OK].
8. After completing the procedure, log out and finish Web Image Monitor.

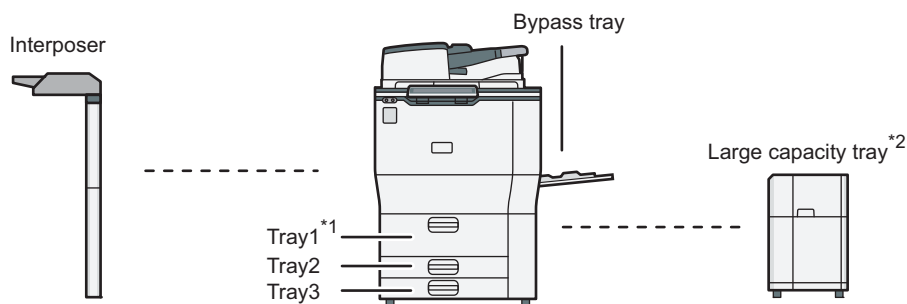
9. Adding Paper and Toner

Loading Paper into the Paper Tray

The method of loading paper varies for each tray type.

CAUTION

- When replacing paper or removing jammed paper, make sure not to trap or injure your fingers.



*1 The A3/11 × 17 tray unit can be attached.

*2 The extension unit of LCT can be attached.

- Before loading paper into a tray, check the paper size and type that can be loaded in the tray, and confirm the paper size that is automatically detected.

page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"

- When loading paper of a size that is not automatically detected, specify the paper size in [Tray/Paper Settings] of [Settings].

page 185 "Specifying the Paper Size That Is Not Automatically Detected"

- To load thick paper or other special paper, specify the paper type or thickness in [Tray/Paper Settings] of [Settings].

See "Tray/Paper Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

page 187 "Specifying Paper Type and Thickness Settings"

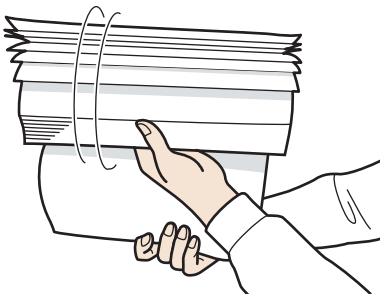
- Check the paper setting before printing. If the paper differs from the paper setting, a mismatch error will occur when you print.
- Straighten curled or warped paper before loading.
- When loading paper on a tray which has a few sheets of paper, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once from the tray. Take out all sheets, fan the sheets, and then load them again.
- You may hear the sound of rubbing paper. This is not a malfunction.
- Do not stack paper over the limit mark.

Fanning the Paper

★ Important

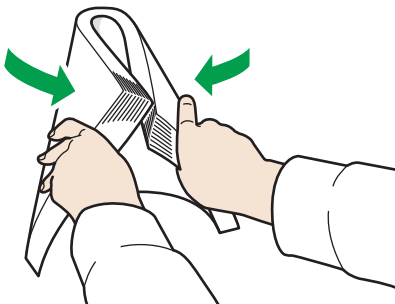
- If you load label paper or thick paper of 150.1–300.0 g/m² (55.1 lb. Cover–165.0 lb. Index), it is important that you fan the sheets thoroughly. Misfeeds may occur if paper is not fanned thoroughly.

1. Loosen the stack by riffling the sheets.

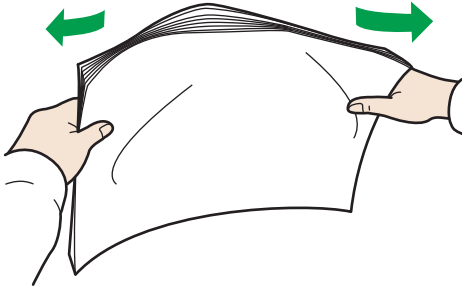


D0CMIC1421

2. Holding its shorter ends, flex the stack back and forth to create space between the sheets. Repeat this several times.

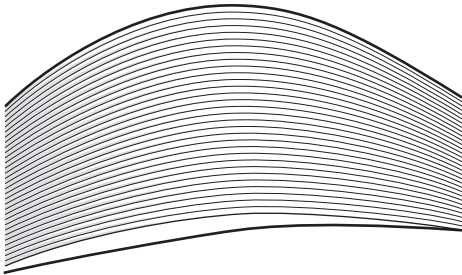


D0CMIC1422



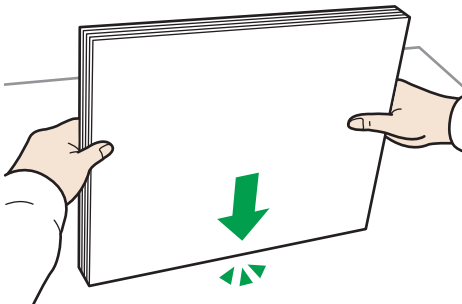
D0CMIC1423

3. Make sure there is space between the sheets.



D0CMIC1424

4. Hold the stack of paper in both hands and tap the long and short edges of the paper against a flat surface to align them.



D0CMIC1425

Loading Paper into Tray 1

 **Region A** (mainly Europe and Asia)

Tray 1 can hold A4 paper only. If you want to print on $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ from Tray 1, contact your service representative.

 **Region B** (mainly North America)

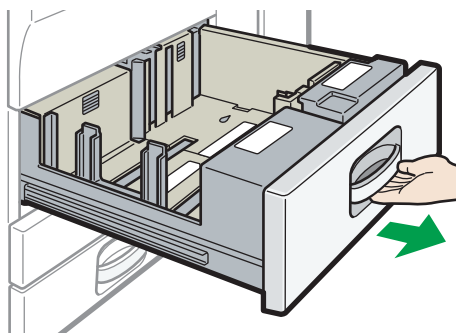
Tray 1 can hold $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ paper only. If you want to print on A4 from Tray 1, contact your service representative.

For the right stack, align the right edge of the paper with the right edge of the tray. For the left stack, align the left edge of the paper to the left edge of the tray.

★ Important

- When paper loaded in the right side of Tray 1 runs out, paper on the left is automatically shifted to the right. Do not pull out Tray 1 while the tray is moving paper; wait until sounds stop coming from the tray.

1. Carefully pull out tray 1 until it stops.

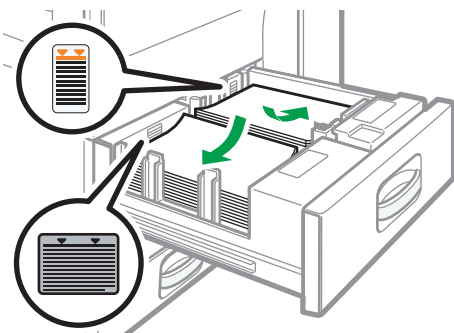


D0CZIM1304

2. Square the paper and load it print side down.

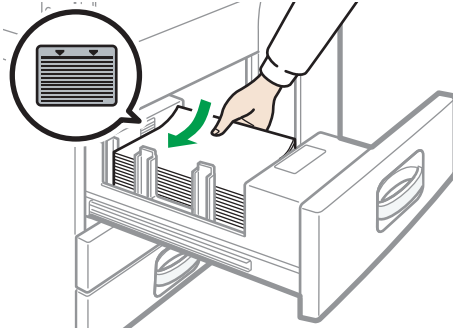
Do not stack paper over the limit mark.

- Whole tray pulled out



D0CZIM1305

- Left half of the tray pulled out



D0CZIM1306

3. Carefully push the paper tray fully in.

↓ Note

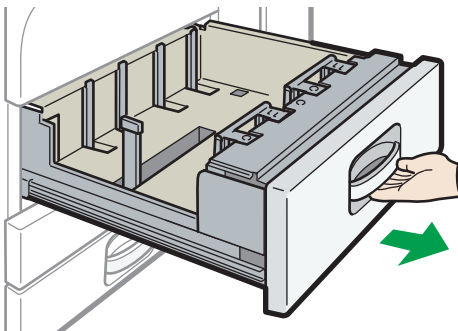
- You can load paper even if tray 1 is in use. It is okay to pull out the left half of the tray while tray 1 is in use.

Loading Paper into the A3/11 × 17 Tray Unit

★ Important

- Region A** (mainly Europe and Asia)
A3/11 × 17 tray unit can hold A3 paper only. If you want to print on A4, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, or 8 1/2 × 11, contact your service representative.
- Region B** (mainly North America)
A3/11 × 17 tray unit can hold 11 × 17 paper only. If you want to print on A3, A4, B4 JIS, 8 1/2 × 14, or 8 1/2 × 11, contact your service representative.
- Check the paper edges are aligned at the right side.

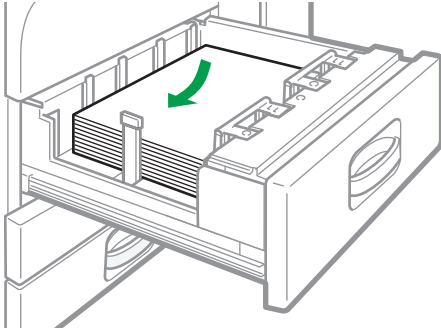
1. Carefully pull out the paper tray until it stops.



D0CZIM1307

2. Square the paper and load it print side down.

Do not stack paper over the limit mark.



D0CZIM1308

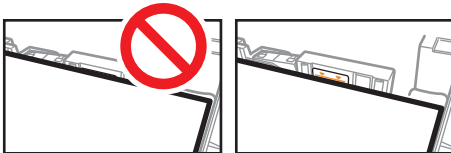
3. Carefully push the paper tray fully in.

Loading Paper into Trays 2 and 3

Each paper tray is loaded in the same way. In the following example procedure, paper is loaded into Tray 2.

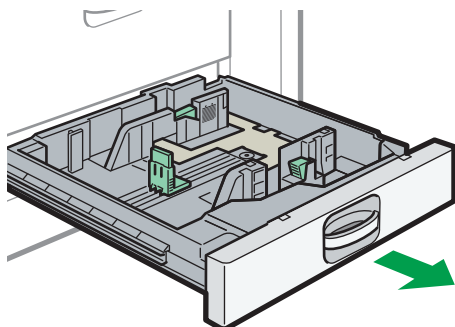
★ Important

- Check that the paper edges are aligned at the right side.
- If a paper tray is pushed vigorously when putting it back into place, the position of the tray's side fences may slip out of place.
- When loading a low number of sheets, be sure not to squeeze the side fences in too tightly. If the side fences are squeezed too tightly against the paper, the edges may crease, the paper may misfeed, or if it weighs between 52–59 g/m² (14–15 lb. Bond), it may wrinkle.
- Do not stack paper over the limit mark. If you load paper over the limit mark, the printed images may become slanted or a paper jam may occur.



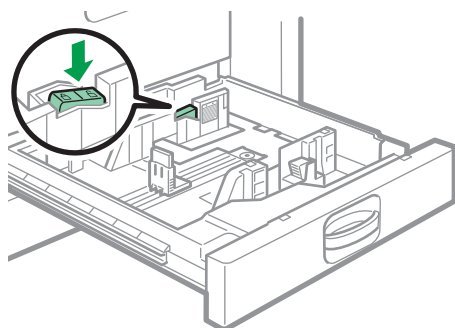
D0CZIM0157

1. Check that paper in the paper tray is not being used, and then pull the tray carefully out until it stops.



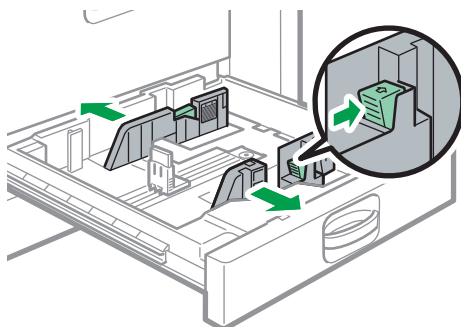
D0CZIM1309

2. Release the lock on the side fence.



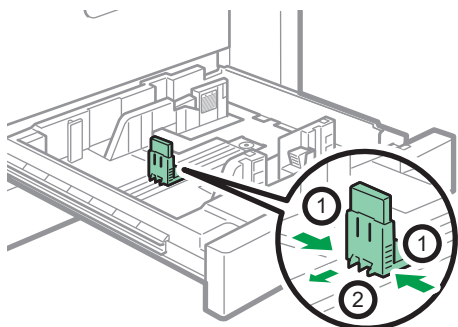
D0CZIM1310

3. While pressing down the release lever of the side fence, slide the side fences outward.



D0CZIM1311

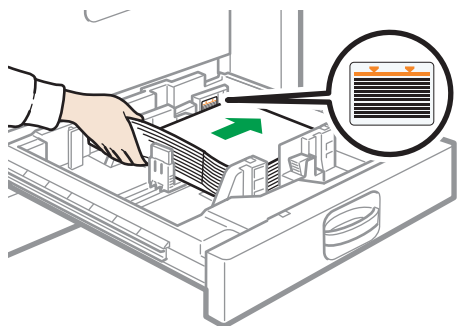
4. While pinching the release lever of the end fence, slide the end fence outward.



D0CZIM1312

5. Square the paper and load it print side down.

Do not stack paper over the limit mark.



D0CZIM1313

6. Align the end and side fences gently against the paper you loaded.

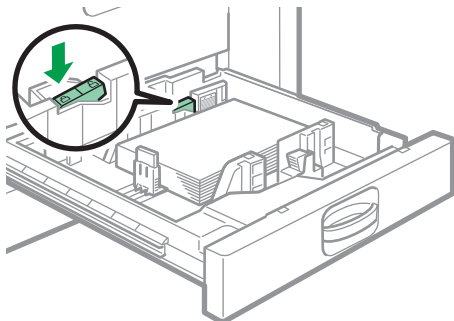
Make sure that there is no space between the paper and the side fences or end fence.

When loading paper weighing 52–59 g/m² (14–15 lb. Bond), keep the gap between the paper and each side fence within 0.5 mm. If the gap is too wide, creases may occur.



D0CZIM1314

7. Re-lock the side fences.



D0CZIM1315

8. Carefully push the paper tray fully in.

9. Specify the paper type and thickness.

page 187 "Specifying Paper Type and Thickness Settings"

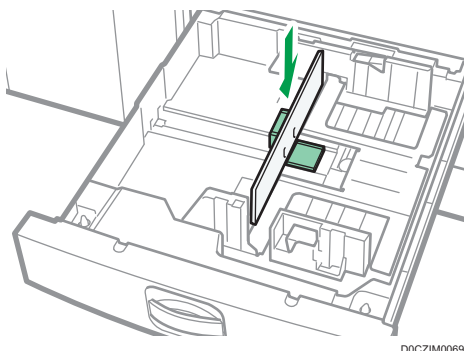
When loading paper of a size that is not automatically detected, specify the paper size.

page 185 "Specifying the Paper Size That Is Not Automatically Detected"

page 186 "Specifying a Custom Size Paper Using the Control Panel"

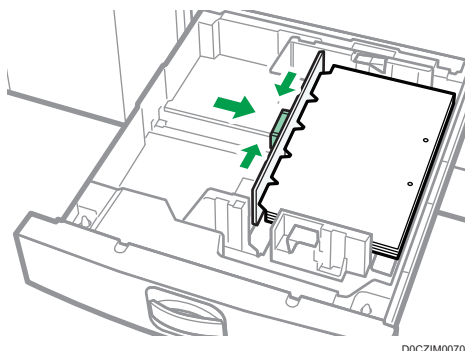
Loading Tab Stock into Trays 2 and 3

- When loading tab stock, always use the optional tab sheet holder.



D0CZIM0069

- Load tab stock so that the side with the tab faces the tab sheet holder.
- Pressing the release lever, adjust the end fence position so that the tab sheet holder fits against the tab stock.



D0CZIM0070

Specify the paper type and thickness before you start printing.

page 187 "Specifying Paper Type and Thickness Settings"

When loading paper of a size that is not automatically detected, specify the paper size.

page 185 "Specifying the Paper Size That Is Not Automatically Detected"

page 186 "Specifying a Custom Size Paper Using the Control Panel"

Loading Paper into the Bypass Tray

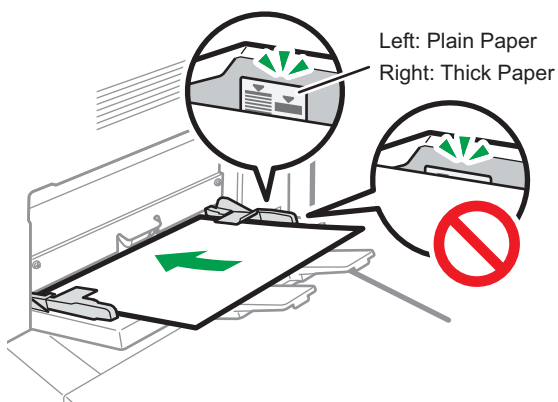
Use the bypass tray to use adhesive labels, translucent paper, and paper that cannot be loaded in the paper trays.

The maximum number of sheets you can load at the same time depends on paper type.

page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"

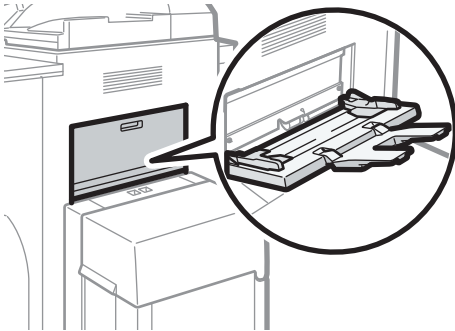
★ Important

- Load only as much paper as can be held between the paper guides on the bypass tray. If you load paper over the limit mark, the print image may be slanted or the paper may be jammed.



D0CZIM1318

1. Open the bypass tray, and then open the extender.



D0CZIM0071

2. Insert the paper print side up as far as it will go into the machine.

Fan sheets before loading so that multiple sheets of paper do not stick to each other and are not fed at once.

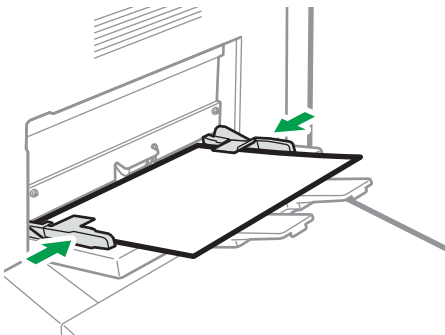
When loading letterhead paper, confirm the orientation, face and back, or location of flaps.

page 202 "Loading Orientation-fixed Paper or Two-sided Paper"

3. Align the paper guides to the paper size.

If the guides are not flush against the paper, images might be skewed or paper misfeeds might occur.

When loading paper weighing 52–59 g/m² (14–15 lb. Bond), keep the gap between the paper and each paper guide within 0.5 mm. If the gap is too wide, creases may occur.



D0CZIM1317

4. Specify the paper type and thickness.

page 187 "Specifying Paper Type and Thickness Settings"

When loading paper of a size that is not automatically detected, specify the paper size.

page 185 "Specifying the Paper Size That Is Not Automatically Detected"

page 186 "Specifying a Custom Size Paper Using the Control Panel"

Note

- To load paper on the bypass tray, it is better to orient it in the direction of .

- Certain types of paper might not be detected properly when placed on the bypass tray. If this happens, remove the paper and place it on the bypass tray again.
- When loading paper weighing 52–59 g/m² (14–15 lb. Bond), thick paper, or translucent paper, specify the paper size and the paper type.

Loading Paper into the Large Capacity Tray (LCT)

 **Region A** (mainly Europe and Asia)

The LCT can hold A4 paper only. If you want to print on 8 1/2 × 11 or B5 JIS from the LCT, contact your service representative.

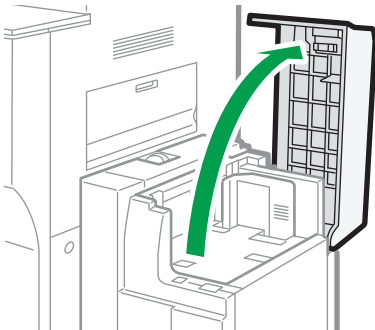
 **Region B** (mainly North America)

The LCT can hold 8 1/2 × 11 paper only. If you want to print on A4 or B5 JIS from the LCT, contact your service representative.

The extension unit is required to load A4, B4 JIS, 8 1/2 × 14, or 8 1/2 × 11.

Important

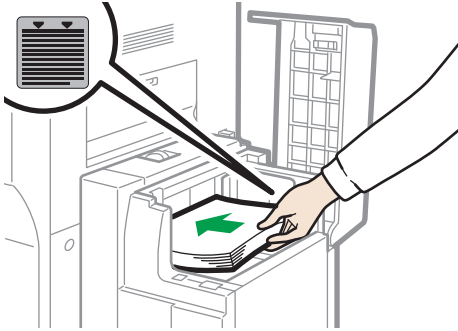
- Check that the paper edges are aligned at the left side.
1. Check that paper in the paper tray is not being used, and then open the top cover of the LCT.



D0CZIM0073

2. Load paper into the paper tray with the print side up.

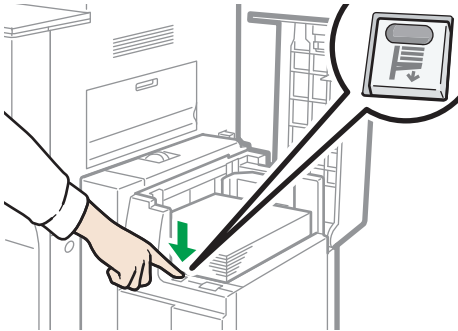
Do not stack paper over the limit mark.



D0CZIM0074

3. Press the [Down] key.

The key blinks while the bottom plate is moving down.



D0CZIM0075

4. Load paper by repeating Steps 2 and 3.

5. Close the top cover of the LCT.

6. Specify the paper type and thickness.

page 187 "Specifying Paper Type and Thickness Settings"

9

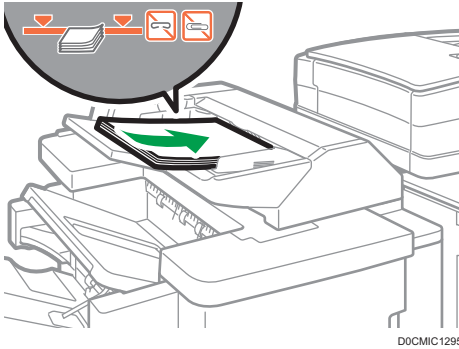
Loading Paper into the Interposer

★ Important

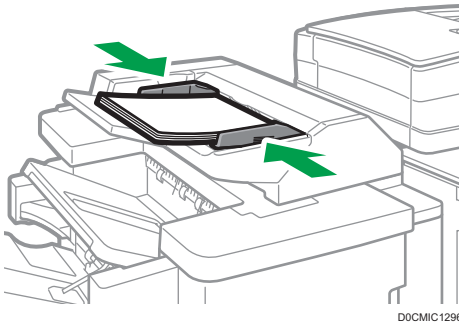
- Do not place anything on top of or leave documents on the sensor. This may lead to the paper size not being correctly scanned or paper jams.
- When using the Z-fold function, the paper in the interposer must be of the same size as the prints after they have been folded. If the paper in the interposer is larger than the Z-folded sheets, a misfeed might occur.
- Do not use paper that has already been printed onto by this machine.

1. Load paper orderly.

Do not stack paper over the limit mark.



2. Adjust the side fences to the paper size.



Note

- Load paper with its printed side up (the front side).
- Load paper in the interposer in the same orientation as paper in the paper tray.
- The staple position or punch hole position will be on the left side of the paper, when you are facing the machine.
- To load the paper in the interposer, align the orientation of originals in the ADF as shown below.

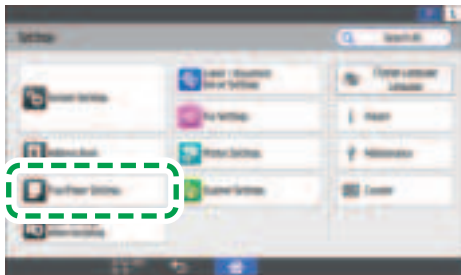
Interposer	ADF

Specifying the Paper Size That Is Not Automatically Detected

1. Press [Settings] on the Home screen.



2. Press [Tray/Paper Settings].

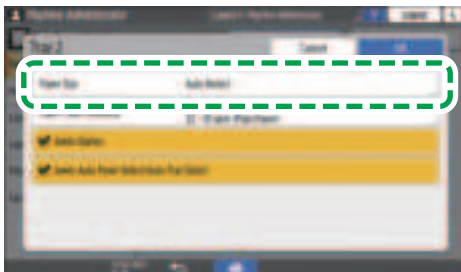


DOC9PA5323

3. Press [Paper Size/Paper Type].
4. Press one tray to set.



5. Press [Paper Size].



DOC2PM1323

To specify for the bypass tray, press [Paper Size: Printer].

The size of the paper in Tray 1 and the large capacity tray (LCT) is fixed and cannot be changed.

6. Choose one paper size from the list shown, and then press [OK].

- 7. Press [OK].
- 8. After completing the configuration, press [Home] (🏠).

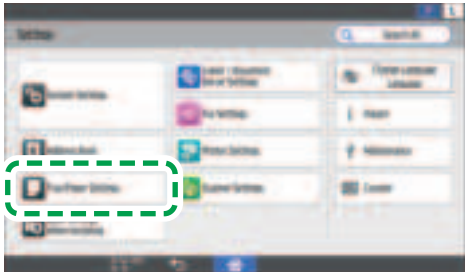
To use paper that can be detected automatically after using paper that cannot be detected automatically, restore the setting of Auto Detect. To restore the setting of Auto Detect, load the paper again, operate steps 1 to 6, select [Auto Detect], and then press [OK].

Specifying a Custom Size Paper Using the Control Panel

- 1. Press [Settings] on the Home screen.

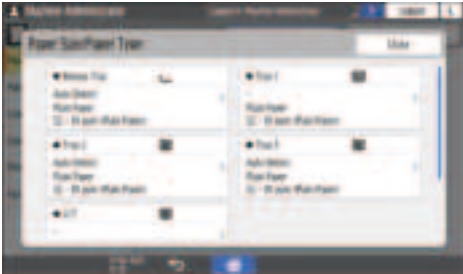


- 2. Press [Tray/Paper Settings].

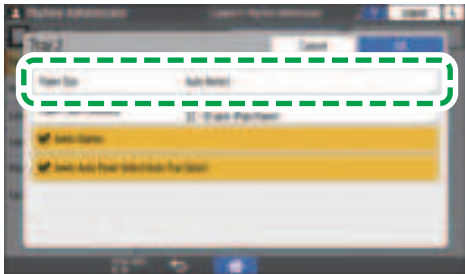


DOC9PA5323

- 3. Press [Paper Size/Paper Type].
- 4. Press one tray to set.



5. Press [Paper Size].

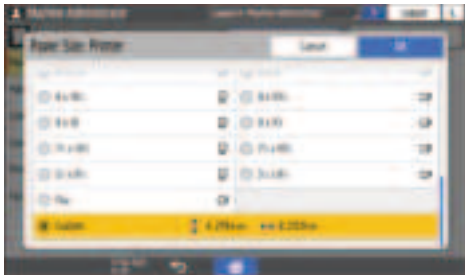


DOCZPM1323

To specify for the bypass tray, press [Paper Size: Printer].

The size of the paper in Tray 1 and the large capacity tray (LCT) is fixed and cannot be changed.

6. Press [Custom] from the list shown.



7. Press the value in the "A" or "B" field, and then enter the new value.

Specify the values within the numbers of "<>", and then press [Done].



8. Press [OK] three times.

9. After completing the configuration, press [Home] (🏠).

Specifying Paper Type and Thickness Settings

If the print settings and the loaded paper that are used for a print job do not match, a mismatch error occurs.

Check and specify the paper settings before you start printing.

★ Important

- Before you change the settings, confirm the priority of the paper settings for printing (priority to the printer driver or to the control panel).
- [Settings] ► [Printer Settings] ► [System] ► [Paper In/Out] ► [Tray Setting Priority]

On the printer driver

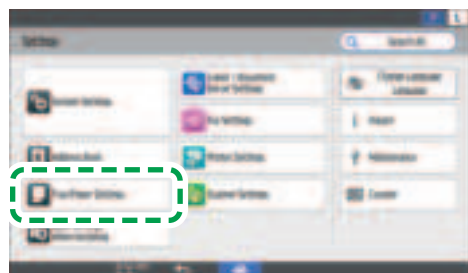
Check the settings of paper tray and paper type on the printer driver and make sure the settings match the loaded paper.

On the control panel

1. Press [Settings] on the Home screen.



2. Press [Tray/Paper Settings].



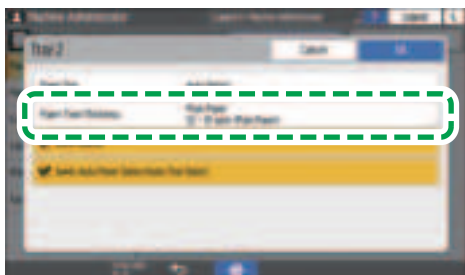
DOC9PA5323

3. Press [Paper Size/Paper Type].

4. Press one tray to set.



5. Press [Paper Type/Thickness].



D0CZPM1326

6. Choose one paper type and paper thickness from the list shown, and then press [OK].



7. Press [OK].

8. After completing the configuration, press [Home] (🏠).

Recommended Paper Sizes and Types

The recommended paper sizes and types for each tray are as described below.

Note

- If you use paper that curls, either because it is too dry or too damp, a staple clogging or paper jam may occur.
- Do not use paper designed for inkjet printers, as these may stick to the fusing unit and cause a misfeed.

Tray 1

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.0–256.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–141.0 lb. Index) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 3	 Region A A4   Region B 8 1/2 × 11 	1,550 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less) × 2
52.0–256.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–141.0 lb. Index) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 3	* 1  Region A 8 1/2 × 11   Region B A4 	1,550 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less) × 2

* 1 To load paper any of the sizes specified above, contact your service representative.

Tray 1 (A3/11 × 17 tray unit)

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.0–128.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–34.0 lb. Bond) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 1	 Region A A3   Region B 11 × 17 	1,000 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less)

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.0–169.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–90.0 lb. Index) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 1	*1 A3, A4, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅	1,000 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less)

*1 To load paper any of the sizes specified above, contact your service representative.

Trays 2 and 3

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.0–256.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–141.0 lb. Index) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 3	Paper sizes that can be detected automatically: A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 8K, 16K	550 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less)
52.0–256.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–141.0 lb. Index) Thin Paper–Thick Paper 3	Select the paper size using the Tray Paper Settings menu: 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 210 × 182 mm, 210 × 170 mm, 210 × 340 mm, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂	550 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less)
52.0–256.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–141.0 lb. Index) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 3	Custom size *1:  Region A Vertical: 139.7–297.0 mm Horizontal: 139.7–432.0 mm  Region B Vertical: 5.50–11.69 inches Horizontal: 5.50–17.00 inches	550 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less)

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
Tab stock ^{*2} 52.0–256.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–141.0 lb. Index) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 3	A4□, 8 1/2 × 14□, 8 1/2 × 11□	550 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less)

*1 For details about how to load custom size paper, contact your service representative.

*2 The tab sheet holder is required.

Bypass Tray

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.0–300.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–165.0 lb. Index) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 4	Paper sizes that can be detected automatically:  Region A A3□, A4, A5  Region B A3□, A4□, 11 × 17□, 8 1/2 × 14 □, 8 1/2 × 11, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2	• Plain Paper–Middle Thick: 100 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less) • Thick Paper 1: 30 sheets • Thick Paper 2: 20 sheets • Thick Paper 3: 18 sheets • Thick Paper 4: 15 sheets

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.0–300.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–165.0 lb. Index) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 4	*1  Region A A6□, B4 JIS□, B5 JIS, B6 JIS□, 11 × 17□, 8¹/₂ × 14□, 8¹/₂ × 13□, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 14□, 8¹/₄ × 13□, 8 × 13□, 8 × 10¹/₂, 8 × 10, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 11 × 15□, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15□, 10 × 14□, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅□, 8¹/₂ × 13¹/₂□  Region B A4□, A5, A6 □, B4 JIS□, B5 JIS, B6 JIS□, 8¹/₂ × 13□, 8¹/₄ × 14 □, 8¹/₄ × 13□, 8 × 13 □, 8 × 10¹/₂, 8 × 10, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 11 × 15 □, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15 □, 10 × 14□, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅□, 8¹/₂ × 13¹/₂□	• Plain Paper–Middle Thick: 100 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less) • Thick Paper 1: 30 sheets • Thick Paper 2: 20 sheets • Thick Paper 3: 18 sheets • Thick Paper 4: 15 sheets
52.0–300.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–165.0 lb. Index) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 4	Custom size *2:  Region A Vertical: 100.0–305.0 mm Horizontal: 139.7–600.0 mm *3*4  Region B Vertical: 3.94–12.00 inches Horizontal: 5.50–23.62 inches *3*4	• Plain Paper–Middle Thick: 100 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less) • Thick Paper 1: 30 sheets • Thick Paper 2: 20 sheets • Thick Paper 3: 18 sheets • Thick Paper 4: 15 sheets
Translucent paper 52.0–128.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–34.0 lb. Bond)	A3□, A4, B4 JIS□, B5 JIS	50 sheets

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
Label paper (adhesive labels) 52.0–128.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–34.0 lb. Bond)	A4, B4 JIS	1 sheet
OHP transparencies	A4, 8 1/2 × 11 ^{*5}	50 sheets

*1 Select the paper size.

- Using the Copy function.

See "Using the Bypass Tray to Copy onto a Label Paper", User Guide (Full Version).

- Using the Printer function.

See "Printing on Label Paper from the Bypass Tray", User Guide (Full Version).

*2 Enter the paper size.

- Using the Copy function.

See "Using the Bypass Tray to Copy onto a Label Paper", User Guide (Full Version).

- Using the Printer function.

See "Printing on Custom-sized Paper Loaded on the Bypass Tray", User Guide (Full Version).

*3 The maximum horizontal length of the custom size is 1,260 mm (49.60 inches). If you want to print on paper with a horizontal length of 600 - 1,260 mm (23.62 - 49.60 inches), contact your service representative. If you want to load paper with a horizontal length of 600 mm (23.52 inches) or longer in the bypass tray, it must have a vertical width of 305 mm (12.1 inches) or less.

*4 When paper larger than 432 mm (17 inches) in size is used, the paper may become wrinkled, may not be fed into the machine, or may cause paper jams.

*5 The supported paper sizes vary depending on the finisher or option that is connected to the machine. For details, see the specifications of each option.

Large Capacity Tray

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.0–128.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–34.0 lb. Bond) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 1	 Region A A4  Region B 8 1/2 × 11	4,400 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less)

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.0–128.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–34.0 lb. Bond) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 1	*1  Region A B5 JIS□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11□  Region B A4□, B5 JIS□	4,400 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less)

*1 To load paper any of the sizes specified above, contact your service representative.

Extension Unit (for LCT)

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.0–128.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–34.0 lb. Bond) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 1	 Region A A4□  Region B 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11□	2,500 sheets
52.0–128.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–34.0 lb. Bond) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 1	*1  Region A A4□, B4 JIS□, B5 JIS□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11□  Region B A4, B4 JIS□, B5 JIS□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11□	2,500 sheets

*1 To load paper any of the sizes specified above, contact your service representative.

Interposer

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
64.0–216.0 g/m ² (17.1 lb. Bond–79.9 lb. Cover) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 2	Paper sizes that can be detected automatically:  Region A A3□, A4, A5, B4 JIS□, B5 JIS, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13□, 8K□, 16K  Region B A3□, A4, B5 JIS□, 11 × 17□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ □, 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 10 × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ □	200 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less)
64.0–216.0 g/m ² (17.1 lb. Bond–79.9 lb. Cover) Plain Paper–Thick Paper 2	*1  Region A 11 × 17□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13□, 8 × 13□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂ □  Region B 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13□, 8 × 10□, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ □, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂ □	200 sheets (Paper Thickness 0.1 mm or less)

*1 If you want to make these sizes detectable, contact your service representative.

Notes on Special Paper

Paper Type	Note
Setting thick paper	page 200 "Thick Paper Orientation and Recommended Status"
Setting letterhead paper	page 202 "Loading Orientation-fixed Paper or Two-sided Paper"
Setting label paper (adhesive labels)	We recommend that you use specified label paper. If paper other than the specified one is used, normal operation and quality cannot be guaranteed.

Paper Type	Note
Setting translucent paper	- When loading translucent paper, always use long grain paper. - Remove copied or printed sheets one by one.

Paper Thickness for Each Paper Weight

Paper Thickness	Paper weight
Plain Paper 1	52–74 g/m ² (14–19.6 lb. Bond)
Plain Paper 2	52–81 g/m ² (14–20 lb. Bond)
Middle Thick	82–103 g/m ² (20–28 lb. Bond)
Thick Paper 1	104–169 g/m ² (28 lb. Bond–90 lb. Index)
Thick Paper 2	170–216 g/m ² (65–80 lb. Cover)
Thick Paper 3	217–256 g/m ² (80 lb. Cover–141 lb. Index)
Thick Paper 4	257–300 g/m ² (141 lb. Index–110 lb. Cover)

Unusable Paper

CAUTION

- Do not use stapled sheets of paper, aluminum foil, carbon paper, or any kind of conductive paper. Doing so can result in fire.

Paper causing faults

Do not use any of the following kinds of treated paper. Doing so may cause faults.

- Paper for inkjet printers
- Thermal paper
- Art paper
- Aluminum foil
- Carbon paper
- Conductive paper
- Paper with perforated lines

- Hemmed-edge paper

Do not copy or print onto sides that are already printed.

Paper causing paper jam

Do not use the following kinds of paper. It may cause a paper jam.

- Bent, folded, or creased paper
- Perforated paper
- Slippery paper
- Torn paper
- Rough paper
- Thin paper with little stiffness
- Paper with a dusty surface

Do not load sheets that have already been printed onto by another machine. (Sheets can become jammed if they have been improperly stored.)

If you use paper curled by humidity or drying, the paper or staple may jam.

Do not load sheets that have already been printed onto by another machine. Doing so may interfere with loading of paper because the powder for preventing offset may attach to the paper roller.

Note

- A paper jam may occur depending on the condition of the paper even when using the recommended paper.

9

Paper Storage

When storing paper, the following precautions should always be followed:

- Do not store paper where it will be exposed to direct sunlight.
- Store all your paper in the same environment - a room where the temperature is 20–25°C (68–77°F) and the humidity is 30–65%.
- Store on a flat surface.
- Do not store paper vertically.
- Once opened, store paper in a plastic bag.

Saving Printouts

- Prints will fade if exposed to strong light or dampness and humidity for extended periods of time. Preserve the quality of your copies by storing them in a binder in a dark, dry place.

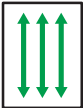
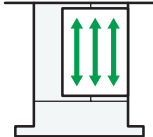
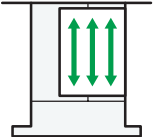
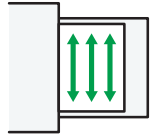
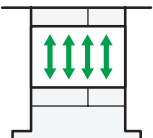
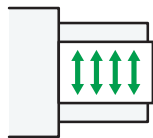
- When folding prints, toner in the folds will come off.
- If the prints are stored in the conditions described below, toner may melt:
 - When a print and a half-dried print are put on top of each other
 - When solvent-type adhesive agents are used for pasting prints
 - When prints are placed on mats made of chlorinated plastic in locations of high temperature for long periods of time
 - When prints are placed in locations of extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater

Thick Paper Orientation and Recommended Status

When loading thick paper of 104.0–300.0 g/m² (28.0 lb. Bond–110.0 lb. Cover) in the paper trays, or in the bypass tray, follow the recommendations below to prevent misfeeds and loss of image quality.

Paper Orientation

Thick paper has a paper direction according to its grain. Set the paper direction according to the grain, as shown in the following diagram:

Direction of paper grain	Tray 1 or LCT	Trays 2–3	Bypass tray
			
	Not recommended		

Paper Storage

- Temperature: 20–25°C (68–77°F)
- Humidity: 30–65%.

Do not use together paper that has been stored in different environments.

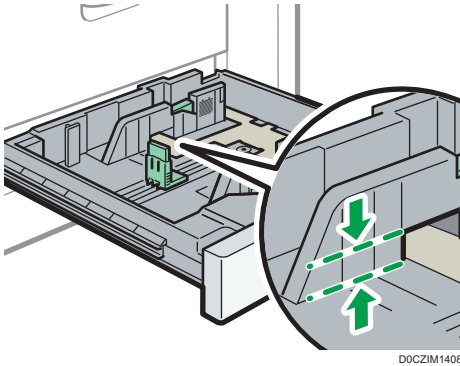
Minimum Number of Sheets

- 20 sheets or more (paper trays of the machine/optional lower paper trays unit used)

After loading paper, position the side fences flush against the paper stack.

Note

- To feed sheets that are smaller than A4 sideways (☐), keep the height of the stacked sheets less than 20 mm (0.8 inches). The upper edge of the square hole in the side fence on the far side indicates the upper limit.



- When printing on thick, smooth paper, be sure to fan the paper thoroughly before loading. If you do not fan thick paper, jams and misfeeds can occur. If paper continues to become jammed or feed in together even after they are fanned, load them one by one from the bypass tray.
- Proper performance and quality may not be achieved under the recommended conditions depending on the paper.
- The printed sheet may curl. If the printed sheet curls, correct it.

Loading Orientation-fixed Paper or Two-sided Paper

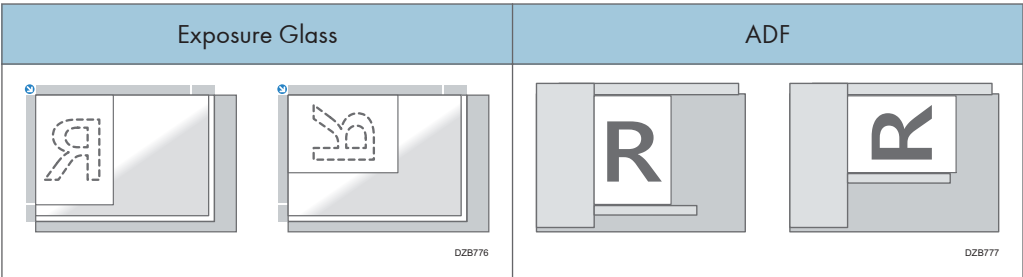
To print onto letterhead paper or business letter paper on which logos or patterns are printed, confirm how to set the paper or the settings of this machine so that the original is printed onto the orientation-fixed (top to bottom) or two-sided paper correctly.

Copying onto Letterhead Paper

Specify the settings of this machine as described below, and then place an original and load the paper.

- [Copier / Document Server Settings] ► [Paper/Paper Input] ► [Letterhead Setting] ► [On]

Original Orientation



Paper Orientation

Copy side	Tray 1	Trays 2–3	LCT	Bypass tray
One-sided		 		 
Two-sided		 		 

Printing onto Letterhead Paper Using the Printer Driver

Specify the settings of this machine as described below.

- [Printer Settings] ► [System] ► [Paper In/Out] ► [Letterhead Setting] ► [Auto Detect]

Paper Orientation

Print side	Tray 1	Trays 2–3	LCT	Bypass tray
One-sided		 		 
Two-sided		 		 

↓ Note

- When you specify [Letterhead Setting] to [On (Always)], you can print onto letterhead paper without specifying the paper type in the printer driver's settings to [Letterhead].

Recommended Original Size and Weight

Region A (mainly Europe and Asia)

Original location		Original size	Original weight
Exposure glass		Up to A3	-
ADF	One-sided originals	A3–B6 JIS (Japanese Industrial Standard), A6 ^{*1} 11 × 17–5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ ^{*2}	40–128 g/m ² (11–34 lb. Bond) ^{*3}
	Two-sided originals	A3–A5, A6 ^{*1} 11 × 17–5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ ^{*2}	52–128 g/m ² (14–34 lb. Bond) ^{*3}
	Mixed Sizes mode	A3, B4 JIS, A4, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11	52–81 g/m ² (14–20 lb. Bond)

*1 When a small size paper unit is used on the ADF

*2 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂ can be used only in the scanner function.

*3 When a small size paper unit is used on the ADF: 64–128 g/m² (17–34 lb. Bond)

Region B (mainly North America)

Original location		Original size	Original weight
Exposure glass		Up to 11 × 17	-
ADF	One-sided originals	11 × 17–5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ A3–A5 ^{*1} , A6 ^{*2}	40–128 g/m ² (11–34 lb. Bond) ^{*3}
	Two-sided originals	11 × 17–5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ A3–A5 ^{*1} , A6 ^{*2}	52–128 g/m ² (14–34 lb. Bond) ^{*3}
	Mixed Sizes mode	11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 10 × 14, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , A3, A4	52–81 g/m ² (14–20 lb. Bond)

*1 A5 can be used only in the scanner function.

*2 When a small size paper unit is used on the ADF

*3 When a small size paper unit is used on the ADF: 64–128 g/m² (17–34 lb. Bond)

Note

- An original whose size is within the range of the maximum original scan area can be placed.
- page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions"
- On all sides of the original, there is a missing image area. Even if you place originals on the exposure glass or in the ADF correctly, the missing image area on all four sides of the original might not be copied.
- page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions"
- You can place originals of two different sizes only in Mixed Sizes mode.

Replacing the Toner

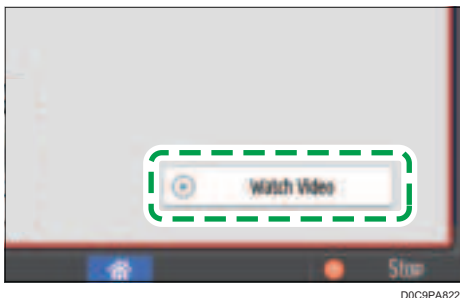
You can view the procedure to replace the toner by watching a movie that is displayed on the control panel.

See "Contact Information", User Guide (Full Version).

★ Important

- Replace the toner after the message prompting replacement is displayed on the control panel.
- The machine may become damaged if you use toner of a different type.
- Do not turn off the power of the machine when replacing the toner. If you turn off the power when replenishing the toner, the specified settings are canceled, and printing will not resume afterwards.
- Store the toner in a dry environment away from direct sunlight and generally under the temperature below 35°C.
- Keep the toner horizontal when storing it.
- After removing the print cartridge from the machine, do not shake it while its opening is facing downward. The remaining toner may spill out.
- After removing the toner cartridge, do not touch the interior of the machine.
- Do not pull out and put back the toner cartridge repeatedly. The remaining toner may leak.
- Follow the procedure displayed on the screen to replenish the toner.

1. Press [Watch Video].



Press [Check Status] and then press [Check] under "Mach. Status" on the [Mach./Applic. Stat] tab.

2. Press the play (▶) key.

3. Replace the toner by following the procedure shown in the video.

↓ Note

- You can transmit data in the fax or scanner function even after the toner runs out. However, you cannot transmit a fax when the number of times of reception and transmission performed in the fax function after the toner has run out and the number of times of communication not recorded in the Records exceeds a total of 1,000. Replace the toner earlier.

- While the message prompting you to replace the toner is displayed, Memory Storage Report for Memory Transmission will not be printed.
- If  appears when there is a lot of toner, hold the cartridge with the opening upward, shake it well, and then reinstall it.

Precautions When Storing Toner

WARNING

- Do not store toner (new or used) or toner containers while toner is inside in a place with an open flame. The toner can ignite and result in burns or fire.

CAUTION

- Do not leave the following items in a place where children can reach them:
 - Toner (new or used)
 - Toner containers while toner is inside
 - Toner-attached parts

Precautions When Replacing the Toner

WARNING

- Do not dispose of the following items into a fire. Toner will ignite on contact with naked flame and burns can result.
 - Toner (new or used)
 - Toner containers while toner is inside
 - Toner-attached parts

- Do not absorb spilled toner (including used toner) using a vacuum cleaner. Absorbed toner may cause ignition or explosion due to electric contact sparks inside the vacuum cleaner. However, you can use a toner-compatible industrial vacuum cleaner. When toner is spilled, remove the spilled toner using a wet cloth so that the toner is not scattered.

- The following explains the warning messages on the plastic bag used in this product's packaging:
 - Do not leave the polythene materials (bags, etc.) supplied with this machine close to babies and small children. Suffocation can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the mouth or nose.

⚠ CAUTION

- When the following occurs while toner is handled, receive emergency measures first, and then consult a doctor if necessary.
 - When inhaling toner, gargle with a large amount of water and move into a fresh air environment.
 - When swallowing toner, dilute gastric contents with a large amount of water.
 - When getting toner into your eyes, flush them with a large amount of water.
- When removing jammed paper, replenishing or replacing toner (new or used), make sure not to inhale toner.
- When removing jammed paper, replenishing or replacing toner (new or used), be careful not to have toner dirt your skin or clothes.
- If toner (new or used) comes into contact with your skin or clothes and smears them, take the following actions:
 - If toner comes into contact with your skin, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.
 - If toner comes into contact with your clothes, wash the stained area with cold water. Heating the stained area by applying hot water will set the toner into the fabric and removing the stain may become impossible.
- When replacing a container with toner (including used toner) or consumables with toner, be careful that the toner does not splatter. After removing used consumables and shutting the lid of the container if the lid is available, put them in a bag.
- Do not open toner containers forcibly while toner is inside, crush or squeeze them. Toner spillage can cause accidental ingestion or dirtying of clothes, hands, or floor.

Disposing Exhausted Toners

You cannot reuse exhausted toners.

When disposing a depleted print cartridge, place the cartridge in a box or plastic bag while paying attention not to spill any toner powder.

 **Region A** (mainly Europe and Asia)

If you want to discard your used toner container, please contact your local sales office. If you discard it by yourself, treat it as general plastic waste material.

 **Region B** (mainly North America)

Please see our local company website for information on the recycling of supply products, or you can recycle items according to the requirements of your local municipalities or private recyclers.

Replenishing the Staples

Contact your consumable supplier and prepare new staples for replenishment when the "Staples are almost out." message is displayed. Replace the staples after the message prompting replacement is displayed on the control panel.

CAUTION

- When operating the machine, do not put your hand inside the booklet finisher tray of the finisher's staple unit. You may trap your fingers in the machine's gap and injury can result.

Important

- Stapling failures or jams may occur if you use a staple cartridge other than that recommended.

Confirming the supplier of consumables

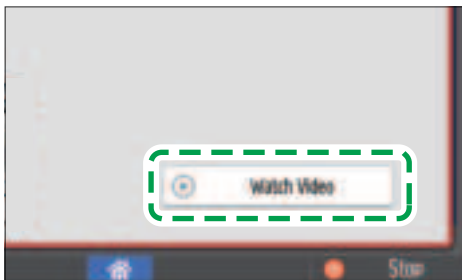
Press [Maintnc./Inquiry/Mach. Info] on the [Check Status] screen to display the telephone number for ordering consumables.

See "Contact Information", User Guide (Full Version).

Replenishing the staples

Replenish the staples while watching the video displayed on the screen for the procedure.

1. Press [Watch Video].



DOC9PA8225

Press [Check Status] and then press [Check] under the message regarding the staples on the [Mach./Applic. Stat] tab.

2. Press the play () key.

3. Replenish the staples while watching the video.

Note

- If you cannot raise the upper unit by holding on both ends of the cartridge, there are staples still remaining inside. Continue using the machine without replenishing the staples.

Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle

The waste toner bottle needs to be replaced soon when the "Waste Toner Bottle is almost full." message is displayed. Prepare a replacement waste toner bottle.

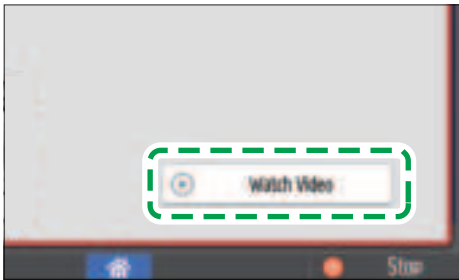
See "Contact Information", User Guide (Full Version).

See the video displayed on the control panel of the machine for the procedure to replace the waste toner bottle.

★ Important

- For safe and correct use, please be sure to read Safety Information before replacing the machine's supplies.
- You cannot reuse the waste toner bottle.
- To prevent the toner being spilled on the floor, table, or other object from the removed waste toner bottle, cover these objects with sheets of newspaper.

1. Press [Watch Video].



Press [Check Status] and then press [Check] under "Mach. Status" on the [Mach./Applic. Stat] tab.

2. Press the play (▶) key.
3. Replace the waste toner bottle by following the procedure shown in the video.

Precautions When Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle

⚠ WARNING

- Do not store toner (new or used) or toner containers while toner is inside in a place with an open flame. The toner can ignite and result in burns or fire.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not dispose of the following items into a fire. Toner will ignite on contact with naked flame and burns can result.
 - Toner (new or used)
 - Toner containers while toner is inside
 - Toner-attached parts
- Do not absorb spilled toner (including used toner) using a vacuum cleaner. Absorbed toner may cause ignition or explosion due to electric contact sparks inside the vacuum cleaner. However, you can use a toner-compatible industrial vacuum cleaner. When toner is spilled, remove the spilled toner using a wet cloth so that the toner is not scattered.
- The following explains the warning messages on the plastic bag used in this product's packaging:
 - Do not leave the polythene materials (bags, etc.) supplied with this machine close to babies and small children. Suffocation can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the mouth or nose.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not leave the following items in a place where children can reach them:
 - Toner (new or used)
 - Toner containers while toner is inside
 - Toner-attached parts
- When the following occurs while toner is handled, receive emergency measures first, and then consult a doctor if necessary.
 - When inhaling toner, gargle with a large amount of water and move into a fresh air environment.
 - When swallowing toner, dilute gastric contents with a large amount of water.
 - When getting toner into your eyes, flush them with a large amount of water.
- When removing jammed paper, replenishing or replacing toner (new or used), make sure not to inhale toner.
- When removing jammed paper, replenishing or replacing toner (new or used), be careful not to have toner dirt your skin or clothes.

CAUTION

- If toner (new or used) comes into contact with your skin or clothes and smears them, take the following actions:
 - If toner comes into contact with your skin, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.
 - If toner comes into contact with your clothes, wash the stained area with cold water. Heating the stained area by applying hot water will set the toner into the fabric and removing the stain may become impossible.
- When replacing a container with toner (including used toner) or consumables with toner, be careful that the toner does not splatter. After removing used consumables and shutting the lid of the container if the lid is available, put them in a bag.
- Do not open toner containers forcibly while toner is inside, crush or squeeze them. Toner spillage can cause accidental ingestion or dirtying of clothes, hands, or floor.

Disposing the Used Waste Toner Bottle

When disposing the used waste toner bottle, place the bottle in a box or plastic bag while paying attention not to spill any toner powder.

 **Region A** (mainly Europe and Asia)

If you want to discard your used waste toner bottle, please contact your local sales office. If you discard it by yourself, treat it as general plastic waste material.

 **Region B** (mainly North America)

Please see our local company website for information on the recycling of supply products, or you can recycle items according to the requirements of your local municipalities or private recyclers.

10. Troubleshooting

Alert Sounds

The machine notifies you with an alert sound when a paper jam occurs, the original is left on the machine, or another problem occurs. Listen to the alert sound for one of the patterns described below, and perform the required procedure accordingly.

Sound pattern *1	Condition	Solution
A short beep	Touch/Notification Sound Login Sound/Logout Sound	-
A short beep, followed by long beep	Invalid Operation Sound	• If you entered an incorrect password, enter the correct password. • If you hear this sound when touching an icon or key, you do not have permission to use the function or setting. Log in to the machine as a user with permission, or consult your user administrator.
A long beep	Operation Completed Sound Copy: Job Done Sound Fax Printing Ended Sound Fax Transmission Ended Sound Fax Reception Ended Sound	Check the operation result.
Two long beeps	Warm-up Sound	The machine is ready for use after the machine is turned on or recovers from the sleep mode.
Five long beeps	Auto Reset Sound	The machine has been reset to the default state after the specified period of time has passed with the machine unoperated. If you were performing and paused an operation, perform the operation from the beginning again.

Sound pattern ^{*1}	Condition	Solution
Five long beeps (repeating four times)	Caution Sound Copy: Forgot Original Sound Scanner: Forgot Original Sound Fax: Forgot Original Sound	Check that an original is not left on the exposure glass and that paper is loaded in the paper tray.
Five short beeps (repeating five times)	Warning Sound	Check the message displayed on the screen, and resolve the problem by removing the jammed paper or original, or replacing the toner.
12 short beeps	Blank Page Detected Sound	Check that the original is placed in the ADF with the side to scan facing up.

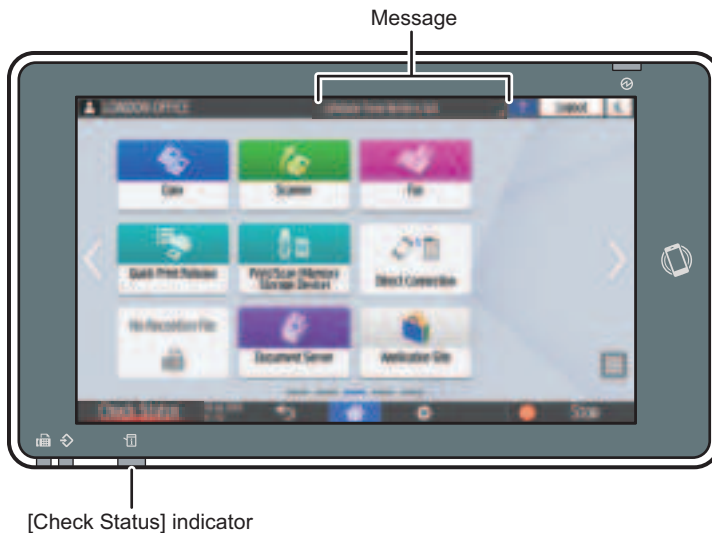
*1 The factory default sound pattern is used as an example in the table above.

Note

- You cannot pause an alert sound that has started. The machine continues to emit the sound until the preset sound pattern is completed.
- You can specify the volume and type of alert sound in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Sound]. The type of sound can be specified for each condition described in the table above. You can also specify the volume of the sound emitted when using On-hook or Immediate Transmission to send a fax in [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Others] ► [Adjust Sound Volume]. Press [Home] (- See "Setting the Sound Volume and Type", User Guide (Full Version).

Checking the Indicators, Icons, and Messages on the Control Panel

The machine notifies you of the machine condition or status of an application with the [Check Status] indicator or a message displayed on the control panel. Check the status and resolve the problem accordingly.



DZC702

- **Message**
Displays a message indicating the status of the machine or application. Press the message to display it in full text. You can also view more than one message as a list.
- **[Check Status] indicator**
If there is a problem such as a paper jam, the [Check Status] indicator lights up or flashes along with a message displayed on the screen. Press [Check Status] to check the status of the machine or application, and resolve the problem accordingly.

10

When an Icon Is Displayed with a Message

When you need to resolve a problem such as a paper jam, an icon is displayed at the beginning of a message. See the table below for the meaning of each icon.

Icon	Condition	Solution and reference
ⓘ	Maintenance or repair is required.	Prepare for maintenance or consider repairing the machine.

Icon	Condition	Solution and reference
	Paper is jammed.	See the animated illustration displayed on the control panel, and remove the jammed paper. See "When Paper or an Original is Jammed", User Guide (Full Version).
	An original has jammed.	See the animated illustration displayed on the control panel, and remove the jammed original. See "When Paper or an Original is Jammed", User Guide (Full Version).
	Paper has run out.	Load paper into the paper tray. page 171 "Loading Paper into the Paper Tray"
	Toner is almost depleted, or has run out.	Prepare a replacement toner. Replace the toner when it runs out. page 206 "Replacing the Toner" Note If  appears when there is a lot of toner, pull out the print cartridge by following the toner replacement procedure that is displayed on the screen, and then set it back again.
	The waste toner bottle is full, or almost full.	Prepare a replacement waste toner bottle. Replace the bottle when it becomes full. page 211 "Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle"
	Staples are nearly depleted, or have run out.	Prepare a cartridge for replacement, and load it when the staples run out. page 210 "Replenishing the Staples"
	The hole punch receptacle is full.	Empty the receptacle. See "When the Hole Punch Receptacle Is Full", User Guide (Full Version).
	A cover is open.	Check that all covers of the machine and options are closed.

Note

- For the names and the contact information of consumables, check [Settings] ► [Inquiry]. Press [Home] (🏠) after completing the operation to close [Settings].
- See "Contact Information", User Guide (Full Version).

When the [Check Status] Indicator Is Lit or Flashing

The [Check Status] indicator notifies the user when the machine requires immediate attention.

Flashing in red

The machine is unavailable for use. Press [Check Status] and resolve the problem as soon as possible.

Flashing in yellow

Maintenance on the machine needs to be performed soon. Perform the required procedure accordingly.

You can display the status confirmation screen with [Check Status]. On the screen, check the detailed status of the machine or application.

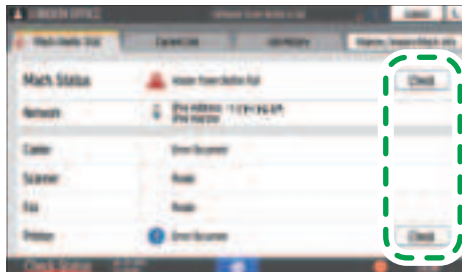
1. Press [Check Status].



DZC703

2. Press [Check] to check the details, and perform the required procedure.

page 217 "When an Icon Is Displayed with a Message"



DZC704

 The machine cannot be used.

: Some of the functions cannot be used, or the toner is almost depleted.

 Note

- Depending on the machine condition, such as a paper jam or open cover, the status confirmation screen may be displayed automatically without pressing [Check Status].

When the Machine Cannot Be Operated

Note

- If a message is displayed on the screen, check the message.
- page 227 "When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated"
- When confirming or changing the settings in [Settings], press [Home] (🏠) after completing the operation to close [Settings].

When the Machine Does Not Respond Correctly to an Operation on the Control Panel

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
The screen of the control panel is not lit.	The machine is in the sleep mode.	Touch the screen.
Nothing is displayed when you touch the screen.	The power of the machine is turned off.	Check that the main power indicator is not lit, and then turn on the main power of the machine. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"
The power of the machine does not come on.	The power cable is unplugged from the wall outlet.	Connect the ground wire, and plug the power cable into the wall outlet. See "Installation Requirements After Moving the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).
	The machine is connected to an extension cord.	You cannot use an extension cord. After checking that the screen is not lit when you touch it and the main power indicator is unlit, remove the extension cord and plug the power cable directly into the wall outlet.
	There may be a problem with the wall outlet.	After checking that the screen is not lit when you touch it and the main power indicator is unlit, plug the power cord into a confirmed operating wall outlet.

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
Only the copy icon is displayed when the machine is turned on.	The functions other than the copy function are starting up.	The time required for a function to start up varies depending on the function. Wait a while.
Only some of the menu items are displayed when you press [Settings] after turning on the power of the machine.	The functions other than the copy function are starting up.	The time required for a function to start up varies depending on the function. More items on the menu in [Settings] are displayed as the functions start up. Wait a while.
The login screen is displayed.	Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, or LDAP Authentication is specified.	Enter the login user name and password, and then press [Login]. For the login user name and password, consult the user administrator. page 54 "Logging In from the Control Panel"
The User Code entry screen is displayed.	User Code authentication is specified.	Enter the User Code, and press [OK]. Consult the user administrator for the user code.
A function is not executed, or you cannot perform an operation.	Another function that cannot be used with the specified function at the same time is being executed.	Wait for the function in progress to end, and then perform the next operation. For details about functions that cannot be used at the same time, see the following section: page 356 "Function Compatibility" When a backup of the address book is being created using Web Image Monitor or another method, the next function is executed after the backup is completed.

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
The key is unresponsive, or another key is activated.	A malfunction is temporarily occurring on the machine. There is a device or equipment that is generating noise in the vicinity.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power again. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"
Multi-touch, such as pinch-in and pinch-out, does not work properly.		
You cannot interrupt copying even after pressing [Stop] while the copy function is operating.	A malfunction is temporarily occurring on the machine.	
You cannot interrupt copying or scanning even after pressing [Stop], and the login screen is displayed.	Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, or LDAP Authentication is specified, and the user who started the copying or scanning operation has logged out.	Log in to the machine as the user who started the copying or scanning operation or as the machine administrator, and press [Stop].
Help is not displayed when you press [Help] (■).	The application that is currently in use does not support the help function, or ■ is grayed out because "Paper Misfeed" or another message is being displayed.	The help function cannot be used when ■ is grayed out. Close the application or message, and then try again.
	■ is grayed out because the user does not have permission to use the browser function.	The help function cannot be used if the user does not have permission to use the browser function. If ■ is always grayed out, consult the user administrator to check whether you have permission to use the browser function. The user administrator can change the access permissions in the address book. See "Confirming the Available Functions", User Guide (Full Version).

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
The screen changes to Web Browser when you press [Help] () , but the help content is not displayed.	The machine is not connected to the network correctly.	Check if you can display a web page in [Web Browser]. If a web page cannot be displayed, check that the machine is connected to the network correctly. See "Selecting the Network Connection Method", User Guide (Full Version).
	The browser is configured not to save cookies.	Check that [Web Browser] ► [Menu] () ► [Settings] ► [Privacy & security] ► [Accept cookies] check box is selected.
The screen remains turned on and the machine does not enter the sleep mode when you press [Energy Saving] () .	The machine is in a condition that does not allow the machine to enter the sleep mode.	Check the conditions in which the machine does not enter the sleep mode. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"
The machine does not shut down when more than four minutes have passed after you press the main power switch.	The shutdown operation could not be performed normally.	Press the main power switch again.
The power of the machine is turned off automatically.	[Main Power Off] is specified in the weekly timer.	Check [Weekly Timer Easy Settings] and [Weekly Timer Detailed Settings] on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Date/Time/Timer] ► [Timer].

When the Machine Does Not Respond Correctly to an Operation from a Computer

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
When using the address book from Device Manager NX, an incorrect password error is displayed even when you enter the correct login user name and password.	A certificate is not installed on the computer when SSL/TLS is enabled on the machine.	Install the certificate on the computer. Consult your network administrator for the certificate.
	An item other than [Simple Encryption] is specified in "Driver Encryption Key:Encryption Strength".	Specify [Simple Encryption] in "Driver Encryption Key:Encryption Strength" in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Security] ► [Extended Security Settings].
You cannot access the machine using Web Image Monitor.	There is a problem with the connection between the machine and the computer.	Check the cable connecting the machine and the computer, and disconnect and then connect the cable again. Also, check the connection to the hub or router, and turn off and on the power of the device if possible. Next, turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"
	A proxy server is specified.	In the proxy setting of the Web browser, specify the IP address of the machine as an exception. You can check the IP address in [Check Status] ► "Network".

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
"There is a problem with this website's security certificate." is displayed and you cannot connect to the machine when accessing the machine using Web Image Monitor.	[Permit SSL/TLS Communication] is set to [Ciphertext Only].	• Click [Continue to this website (not recommended)]. • To specify not to display the message, log in to the machine in the administrator mode, and specify [Ciphertext/Cleartext] in [SSL/TLS] ► "Permit SSL/TLS Communication" under [Device Management] ► [Configuration] ► "Security".
	"https" is entered at the beginning of the URL.	Do not enter "s" after "http".

When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Service Call" SCxxx-xx Contact Serial No. of Machine	The machine needs to be repaired.	Consider repairing the machine.
"Functional Problems" SCxxx-xx Contact Serial No. of Machine	A malfunction that requires maintenance or repair has occurred.	Prepare for maintenance or consider repairing the machine. - If a message prompts you to turn the power of the machine off and then on, the problem may be resolved by turning off the power, waiting for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turning on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power" - When "Press [Cancel] to cancel functions." is displayed, you can continue using the machine except for the function in which the malfunction is occurring after pressing [Cancel].
"Please wait."	The machine is recovering from the sleep mode.	Wait a while. Turn off the power of the machine if the message persists after five minutes, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Please wait."	The machine is preparing to perform a function or executing the image stabilization process.	Wait a while and do not turn off the power of the machine.
	The ambient temperature is outside the temperature range specified for the machine operation.	Check the room temperature and whether it satisfies the operational requirements of the machine. If the machine has just been moved to the current location, leave it be for some time and allow it to adapt to the environment before use. See "Installation Requirements After Moving the Machine", User Guide (Full Version). If the message persists after five minutes even when the room temperature is within the specifications, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"Please wait."	A consumable or supply such as the toner has been replenished.	Wait a while and do not turn off the power of the machine. Turn off the power of the machine if the message persists after five minutes, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"Shutting down... Please wait. Main power will be turned off automatically. Maximum waiting time: 4 minute(s)"	The power of the machine was turned off while the machine was starting up or in the standby mode.	Wait until the power is turned off.

Note

- If the message persists even after you have performed the operations as instructed in the following message, a malfunction may temporarily occur on the machine. Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power.

- page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"
 - "Cover Open"
 - "Add Toner" / "Add Staples"
 - "Waste Toner Bottle is full." / "Hole Punch Receptacle is full."
 - "Original left on exposure glass."
 - "No paper."
 - "Proof tray"
 - "Shift Tray"

When a Message Appears While Using the Copy Function

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Cannot Detect Original Size"	An original is not placed correctly on the machine.	Place the original correctly. When you place an original on the exposure glass, the machine detects the original size by opening and closing the ADF. Open the cover or ADF by more than 30 degrees when placing an original.
	An original with a difficult-to-detect size even in the regular size, such as a transparency or paper with sticky notes, is placed on the machine.	When scanning an original with a difficult-to-detect size, specify the paper tray in [Paper Select]. Also, when making an enlarged or reduced copy, select an item other than [Fit to Paper Size] See "Sizes Detectable with Auto Paper Select", User Guide (Full Version).
	An original of a custom size is placed on the machine.	When scanning an original of a custom size, specify the original size in [Original Setting] ► [Original Size] ► [Custom Size].
"Cannot XXX paper of this size." "XXX is not available with this paper size." ("2 Sided Copy" or the name of specified finishing appears in place of XXX)	A paper size that is not supported in Duplex copying or the specified finishing type is specified.	Check the paper size supported in Duplex copying and the specified finishing type and load the supported paper. page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions"
"Exceeded the maximum number of multi-sheet fold."	The maximum number of sheets that can be specified for multi-sheet fold has been exceeded.	Up to three sheets can be folded at a time in multi-sheet fold. Reduce the number of sheets to copy, and set the originals again.

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Exceeded the maximum number of sheets that can be used. Copying will be stopped."	When the copy volume use limitation is enabled, copying was canceled because the copy volume of the user exceeded the upper limit allotted for the user.	For details about the copy volume use limitation, consult the user administrator. The user administrator can change the limit on the copy volume use. See "Specifying Maximum Print Volume Use of Each User", User Guide (Full Version).
"Set next original(s), then press [Start]."	Duplex copying is specified.	When not copying onto both sides of paper, clear the [1 sided→2 sided] and [2 sided→2 sided] check boxes.
"Stapling capacity exceeded."	The number of sheets that can be stapled together is exceeded.	Check the number of sheets that can stapled together at a time, and reduce the number of sheets in the original placed on the machine. page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions"

Messages Displayed When the Connect Copy Function Is Unavailable

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Cannot connect to the sub-machine. Check the status of the sub-machine."	A service call has occurred on the sub-machine, or the hard disk of the sub-machine is malfunctioning.	Press [Exit] on the main machine and follow the instructions on the display.
"Cannot print from the sub-machine. Check the status of the sub-machine."	A paper or staple jam has occurred on the sub-machine, or toner or other supplies need to be replaced.	Follow the instructions displayed. page 206 "Replacing the Toner" See "Precautions When Removing Jammed Paper", User Guide (Full Version). See "When a Staple Is Jammed", User Guide (Full Version). If the sub-machine's display indicates that a cover is open, follow the instructions displayed.

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Cannot print from the sub-machine. Check the status of the sub-machine."	The default setting of the sub-machine is being modified.	Close [Settings] of the sub-machine.
"Cannot print from the sub-machine. Sub-machine will be disconnected."	The sub-machine has stopped due to power failure or communication error.	Continue copying using the main machine.
"Fold is available only when Sort mode is selected in Connect Copy."	Sort has not been selected with fold.	Select the Sort function.
"No stamp data in the sub-machine."	Stamp data on the sub-machine has been deleted.	Reprogram the stamp on the sub-machine.
"Sub-machine does not have the same paper setting(s)."	Paper type or tray settings on the two machines do not match.	Make the same settings on both machines.
"Sub-machine is in Interrupt mode."	The sub-machine is in Interrupt mode.	Press [Interrupt] on the sub-machine to cancel Interrupt mode.
"Sub-machine paper settings must be the same to use this tray."	Paper tray settings on the two machines do not match.	Make the same settings on both machines.

When a Message Appears While Using Document Server

For details about the messages that are displayed when printing a document, see the descriptions of the messages that are displayed in the copy function.

page 230 "When a Message Appears While Using the Copy Function"

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Cannot delete the folder because it contains locked files. Contact the file administrator."	The folder contains a locked document.	Request the file administrator to unlock the document. The file administrator can unlock documents. See "Specifying Access Privileges for Documents Stored in Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"Cannot detect original size."	An original is not placed on the machine.	Place the original correctly. When you place an original on the exposure glass, the machine detects the original size by opening and closing the ADF. Open the cover or ADF by more than 30 degrees when placing an original.
	An original with a difficult-to-detect size even in the regular size, such as a transparency or paper with sticky notes, is placed on the machine.	When scanning an original of a difficult-to-detect size, specify the paper tray. Also, when making an enlarged or reduced copy, select an item other than [Fit to Paper Size]. See "Sizes Detectable with Auto Paper Select", User Guide (Full Version).
	An original with a custom size is placed on the machine.	When scanning an original with a custom size, specify the original size in [Original Setting] ► [Original Size] ► [Custom Size].
"Cannot display preview of this page."	The format of the image data is corrupted.	Press [Confirm] to display the preview screen without a thumbnail. If the image data comprises multiple pages, press   to display a different page.

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Magazine or Booklet mode cannot be used for data stored with mixed functions."	A document scanned in the copy function and a document stored in the printer function are selected together, and [Booklet] or [Magazine] is specified.	You cannot specify [Booklet] or [Magazine] to the document comprising data stored in the different functions.
"The selected folder is locked. Please contact the file administrator."	The wrong password was entered 10 times while performing operation on a password-protected folder, and the folder is locked.	Request the file administrator to unlock the folder. The file administrator can unlock folders. See "Managing Folders as a File Administrator", User Guide (Full Version).

When a Message Appears While Using the Fax Function

Note

- When confirming or changing the settings in [Settings], press [Home] () after closing [Settings].

Messages that Appear During Operation or When Sending/Receiving a Fax Cannot Be Performed

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Cannot detect original size."	An original is not placed correctly on the machine.	Place the original correctly. When you place an original on the exposure glass, the machine detects the original size by opening and closing the ADF. Open the cover or ADF by more than 30 degrees when placing an original.
	An original with a difficult-to-detect size, even in the regular size, such as a transparency or paper with sticky notes or a custom size original, is placed on the machine.	Specify [Scan Size] in [Settings].
"Cannot receive emails currently."	The machine is receiving a On-demand Email Notification (a query e-mail from the administrator), and manual reception cannot be performed.	Wait a while, and press [Manual Reception: Email].

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Error occurred, and transmission was cancelled."	An original had jammed while sending a fax.	Press [Confirm], remove the jammed original, and then send the fax again.
	An error occurred temporarily in the machine, or there was interference on the line such as excessive noise or cross-talk.	Press [Confirm] and send the fax again.
"Functional problem occurred. Stopped processing."	The power of the machine was lost while receiving an Internet Fax.	Even if you turn on the power immediately, you may not be able to resume reception until the timeout duration has passed depending on the settings of the e-mail server. Wait a while. To receive the fax manually, wait until the duration has passed and then operate the machine to perform reception. For the timeout duration, consult the administrator.
"Memory is full. Cannot scan more. Transmitting only scanned pages."	The memory is full.	Press [Confirm] to return to the stand-by state and start sending the pages that are already scanned and stored. Check the transmission result report for unsent pages, and send those pages later.
"Some invalid destination(s) contained. Do you want to select only valid destination(s)?"	A folder destination is included in the group.	When sending a fax to a destination other than a folder destination, press [Select].

Note

- When the JPEG/PDF file that is attached to an e-mail is sent to the machine, check the message and resolve the problem accordingly.
- page 249 "When a Message Appears While Using the Printer Function"

Messages that Appear When the Machine Cannot Connect to the Network

For details about your network environment, consult the network administrator.

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Check whether there are any network problems." [14-01]	The destination device did not respond.	- Check that the computer specified as the destination is operating normally and connected to the network. - Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.
"Check whether there are any network problems." [14-03]	You do not have permission to access the shared folder specified as the destination.	Check the access permission settings of the shared folder on the destination computer. page 142 "Scanning Documents and Sending the Scanned Data to a Folder"
"Check whether there are any network problems." [14-07]	The shared folder specified as the transfer destination cannot be found in Folder Transfer.	Creating a shared folder on the destination computer. To check the folder name, select the destination in the address book, press [Edit], and see "Path" in [Destinations] tab ► [Folder]. See "Transferring a Received Fax Document to E-mail Address or Folder", User Guide (Full Version).
	The amount of available hard disk space on the destination computer is insufficient to perform Folder Transfer.	Check that the computer specified as the transfer destination has enough free space.
"Check whether there are any network problems." [14-09]	The password registered in the address book is invalid when performing Folder Transfer.	Select the forwarding destination in the address book, press [Edit], and specify a password in the [Destinations] tab ► [Folder] ► [Folder Authentication Info].
"Check whether there are any network problems." [14-33]	[Fax Email Account] is not specified.	Register email address, user name, and password in [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Detailed Initial Settings] ► [Fax Email Account].
"Check whether there are any network problems." [14-51]	The destination to which to perform Folder Transfer was deleted from the address book.	Register the destination folder to the address book. See "Registering the Destination Folder to Use for Send to Folder", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Check whether there are any network problems." [15-11]	The POP3 (IMAP4) server could not be found.	Check the settings in [Reception Protocol], [POP3/IMAP4 Settings] and [Email Communication Port] on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Send (Email/Folder)] ► [Email].
	The DNS server could not be found.	Check the [DNS Configuration] setting on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Network/Interface].
	The machine is not connected to the network.	Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.
"Network communication has failed. Cannot access the SIP server. Please check the address setting of the SIP server or the SIP server settings."	The SIP server could not be accessed.	Specify the correct "SIP Server IP Address" in [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Detailed Initial Settings] ► [IP-Fax Settings] ► [SIP Settings]. See "Sending Documents by IP-Fax", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Cannot connect to the destination normally because there is no IP-FAX function compatibility between the destination and this machine."	The destination device is unable to connect with the IP-Fax function of the machine.	Sending a fax using the IP-Fax function is not possible. Send the fax using the G3 line if possible.
"Network communication has failed. Cannot register this machine to SIP server. Please check the address setting of the SIP server or other settings of the SIP server."	The SIP server rejected the registration of the user name.	Specify the correct "SIP Server IP Address" and "SIP User Name" in [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Detailed Initial Settings] ► [IP-Fax Settings] ► [SIP Settings]. See "Sending Documents by IP-Fax", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. Failed to connect to POP/IMAP server. Please check machine settings and the status of server and network."	The POP3 (IMAP4) server could not be found.	Check the settings in [Reception Protocol], [POP3/IMAP4 Settings] and [Email Communication Port] on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Send (Email/Folder)] ► [Email].
	The DNS server could not be found.	Check the [DNS Configuration] setting on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Network/Interface].
	The machine is not connected to the network.	Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.
"Network communication has failed. Failed to connect to the destination. Please check if the destination is correct and destination machine status."	The SMTP server could not be found.	Check [SMTP Server] on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Send (Email/Folder)] ► [Email].
	The DNS server could not be found.	Check [DNS Configuration] on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Network/Interface].
	The machine is not connected to the network.	Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.
	Communication with the destination specified for Folder Transfer could not be established properly.	• Check that the computer specified as the transfer destination is operating normally and connected to the network. • Check the transfer settings. See "Transferring a Received Fax Document to E-mail Address or Folder", User Guide (Full Version).
	The destination could not be found when the fax was sent without using the SMTP server.	Check that the destination is specified correctly. See "Sending Internet Faxes without Using SMTP Server", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. Failed to connect to the destination folder. Please check if the destination is correct and destination machine settings."	The shared folder specified as the destination of Folder Transfer cannot be found.	Specify the destination from the address book, press [Edit], and check that the setting in the [Destinations] tab ► [Folder] matches the folder name or path of the shared folder on the destination computer. If the shared folder on the destination computer has been deleted, create the folder. See "Transferring a Received Fax Document to E-mail Address or Folder", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check a destination machine status and both authentication setting of destination machine and this machine."	A malfunction is occurring on the SMTP server or the computer specified as the destination when sending an e-mail without using the SMTP server.	Check that the SMTP server and the computer specified as the transfer destination are functioning normally.
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check destination machine status and remaining memory."	No free space is available on an SMTP server, the computer specified as the destination for Folder Transfer, or the computer specified as the destination when sending an e-mail without using the SMTP server.	Check that free space is available on the SMTP server and the destination computer.
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check if the destination is correct."	The specified destination does not exist.	Check the destination e-mail address, and specify again if necessary.
	The destination could not be found when the fax was sent without using the SMTP server.	Check that the destination is specified correctly. See "Sending Internet Faxes without Using SMTP Server", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check status and settings of the destination machine."	A malfunction is occurring on an SMTP server, the computer specified as the destination for Folder Transfer, or the computer specified as the destination when sending an e-mail without using the SMTP server.	Check that the SMTP server and the destination computer are functioning normally.
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check the access privilege setting of the destination."	A malfunction is occurring on an SMTP server, the computer specified as the destination for Folder Transfer, or the computer specified as the destination when sending an e-mail without using the SMTP server.	Check that the SMTP server and the destination computers are functioning normally.
	The shared folder specified as the transfer destination cannot be found in Folder Transfer.	Creating a shared folder on the destination computer. To check the folder name, select the destination in the address book, press [Edit], and see "Path" in [Destinations] tab ► [Folder]. See "Transferring a Received Fax Document to E-mail Address or Folder", User Guide (Full Version).
	The user name and/or password registered in the address book are invalid when performing Folder Transfer.	Select the forwarding destination in the address book, press [Edit], and specify [Destinations] tab ► [Folder] ► [Folder Authentication Info] again. See "Registering the Destination Folder to Use for Send to Folder", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check the administrator email address setting."	The administrator e-mail address is not registered when the machine is configured to send Records by e-mail.	- Specify [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Send (Email/Folder)] ► [Email] ► [Administrator's Email Address]. - When configuring the machine to not send Records by e-mail, change the current value of bit number [4] under switch number [21] in [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Detailed Initial Settings] ► [Parameter Setting] ► [Parameter Setting]. See "Changing the Parameter Settings", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check user name and password."	The user name and/or password registered in the address book are invalid when performing Folder Transfer.	Select the forwarding destination in the address book, press [Edit], and specify [Destinations] tab ► [Folder] ► [Folder Authentication Info] again. See "Registering the Destination Folder to Use for Send to Folder", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. The registration of fax email address or administrator email address is required."	Both the e-mail address to use for sending and receiving e-mails and the administrator e-mail address are not registered when sending an e-mail.	Specify [Fax Email Account] on [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Detailed Initial Settings] or [Administrator's Email Address] on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Send (Email/Folder)] ► [Email]. See "Sending and Receiving Documents by Internet Fax", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. The specified address is invalid."	A domain name was not specified when sending an e-mail without using the SMTP server.	- Specify a host name or IP address as the destination, and send the e-mail again. - When you specified the destination from the address book, select the destination in the address book, press [Edit], and then check the settings in "Send via SMTP Server" and "SMTP Authentication Info" in [Destinations] tab ► [Email Address]. See "Sending Internet Faxes without Using SMTP Server", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. Fax email account is not registered. Please check settings."	[Fax Email Account] is not specified.	Specify the settings in "User Name" and "Password" in [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Detailed Initial Settings] ► [Fax Email Account].
"Network communication has failed. Fax email address is not registered. Please check settings."	[Fax Email Account] is not specified.	Register Email Address in [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Detailed Initial Settings] ► [Fax Email Account].
"Network communication has failed. No response from the destination. Please check the cable connection and if the network equipment is turned on."	The destination device did not respond.	• Check that the computer specified as the destination is operating normally and connected to the network. • Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.
"Network communication has failed. POP/IMAP server authentication error has occurred. Please check email account and password."	A login attempt to the POP3 (IMAP4) server failed.	Check the [POP before SMTP] setting on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Send (Email/Folder)] ► [Email] and the [Fax Email Account] setting on [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Detailed Initial Settings].
"Network communication has failed. POP/IMAP server is not registered. Please check settings."	The POP3 (IMAP4) server address is not registered.	Specify the setting in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Send (Email/Folder)] ► [Email] ► [POP3/IMAP4 Settings].
"Network communication has failed. S/MIME certificate error has occurred. Please check the certificate of both destination and this machine."	A user certificate (destination certificate) is not registered or has expired.	Install the correct user certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
	A device certificate (destination certificate) is not registered or has expired.	Install the correct device certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. SIP digest authentication failed. Please check the SIP digest authentication user name and password."	The authentication password on the SIP server and the password registered on the machine do not match.	Check that the password registered on the SIP server and "Password" in SIP Digest Authentication under [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Detailed Initial Settings] ► [IP-Fax Settings] ► [SIP Settings] match. See "Sending Documents by IP-Fax", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. The certificate of destination is not currently valid. Please re-issue it."	The user certificate (destination certificate) has expired.	Install a new user certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. The certificate of this machine is not currently valid. Please re-issue it."	A device certificate (destination certificate) is not registered or has expired.	Install a new device certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. The certificate of this machine or destination machine is not currently valid. Please re-issue it."	The user certificate (destination certificate) and device certificate have expired.	Install a new user certificate and device certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. The destination does not support IP-FAX."	An IP-Fax was sent to a destination that does not support IP-Fax.	Sending a fax using the IP-Fax function is not possible. Send the fax using the G3 line if possible.
"Network communication has failed. The IP address is invalid. Please check the network settings."	An invalid IP address is registered.	Specify the correct [Effective Protocol] and [IP Address (IPv4)], or [IP Address (IPv6)] on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Network/Interface]. See "Connecting to a Wired LAN", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. The IP address may be invalid. Please check the network settings."	The settings in [SIP Server IP Address] and [Effective Protocol] do not match.	Check that SIP Server IP Address in [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Detailed Initial Settings] ► [IP-Fax Settings] ► [SIP Settings] and [Effective Protocol] on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Network/Interface] are correct.
	An invalid IP address is registered.	Specify the correct [Effective Protocol] and [IP Address (IPv4)], or [IP Address (IPv6)] on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Network/Interface]. See "Connecting to a Wired LAN", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. The line has been disconnected. Please check the destination and caller ID notification setting."	The destination terminated the communication.	• Check that the destination is specified correctly. • If the destination refuses to receive a fax with no sender information, enable notifying of the information and send the fax again.
"Network communication has failed. The mail address for authentication does not match with administrator's one. Please check the settings."	When a signature is specified, the SMTP authentication e-mail address or POP before SMTP authentication e-mail address does not match the administrator e-mail address.	Check that the authentication e-mail address matches the address specified in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Send (Email/Folder)] ► [Email] ► [Administrator's Email Address]. See "Send (Email/Folder)", User Guide (Full Version).

Note

- Change the current value to [1] under switch number [21] and bit number [6] in [Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Detailed Initial Settings] ► [Parameter Setting] ► [Parameter Setting] to disable displaying the "Network communication has failed." message. Change the setting when you are not using the IP-Fax or Internet Fax function.
- See "Changing the Parameter Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

Messages Displayed When the Remote Fax Function Is Unavailable

For details about your network environment, consult the network administrator.

When a message is displayed on the main-machine

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Check whether there are any network problems." [16-00]	The machine is not connected to the network.	• Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly. • Press [Confirm] to use the G3 fax.
"Connection with the remote machine has failed. There is a problem with the remote machine structure. Contact the administrator."	Another main-machine is registered in [Remote Machine].	Register the sub-machine in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Machine] ► [Others] ► [Register/Change/Delete Remote Machine].
	Another main-machine is registered in [Remote Machine] on the sub-machine.	Register the machine in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Machine] ► [Others] ► [Register/Change/Delete Remote Machine] on the sub-machine.
"Transfer error has occurred. Check the status of the remote machine."	A network error occurred while transferring the data.	• Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly. • Check that the sub-machine is connected to the network and functioning normally. • Check that the IP address or host name of the main-machine is specified correctly in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Machine] ► [Others] ► [Register/Change/Delete Remote Machine] on the sub-machine.

When a message is displayed on the sub-machine

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Authentication with remote machine failed. Check remote machine's authentication settings."	Authentication failed when user authentication is enabled on the main-machine, or the user does not have permission to use the fax function.	Specify the same user authentication setting as the main-machine, and register a user who has the permission to use the fax function. See "Verifying Users to Operate the Machine (User Authentication)", User Guide (Full Version).
"Check whether there are any network problems." [16-00]	The machine is not connected to the network.	Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.
"Connection with the remote machine has failed. Check the remote machine status."	The main-machine is turned off, or not functioning normally.	Turn on the power of the main-machine. If the power is turned on, check that the device is functioning normally.
	A network error occurred.	Check that the machine and the main-machine are connected to the network correctly.
	A timeout error occurred while connecting to the main-machine.	Check that the IP address or host name of the main-machine is specified correctly in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Machine] ► [Others] ► [Register/Change/Delete Remote Machine] on the sub-machine.
"Connection with the remote machine has failed. There is a problem with the remote machine structure. Contact the administrator."	Another sub-machine is registered in [Remote Machine].	Register the main-machine in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Machine] ► [Others] ► [Register/Change/Delete Remote Machine].
	The machine is not registered in [Remote Machine] on the main-machine.	Register the machine in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Machine] ► [Others] ► [Register/Change/Delete Remote Machine] on the main-machine.

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Remote fax is not available because [User Code Authentication] is active."	User Code authentication is specified.	User Code authentication is not supported on both the main-machine and sub-machine. Consider another method of user authentication.
"Remote machine registration is incorrect. Contact the administrator."	The main-machine could not be found.	Check that the IP address or host name of the main-machine is specified correctly in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Machine] ► [Others] ► [Register/Change/Delete Remote Machine].
"Transfer error has occurred. Check the status of the remote machine."	A network error occurred while transferring the data.	• Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly. • Check that the main-machine is connected to the network and functioning normally. • Check that the IP address or host name of the main-machine is specified correctly in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Machine] ► [Others] ► [Register/Change/Delete Remote Machine].
"Transfer error has occurred. Check the status of the remote machine." "The HDD of the remote machine is full."	There is no free space available on the hard disk of the main-machine.	Delete files that are no longer needed on the main-machine.

When a Message Appears While Using the Printer Function

Note

- When confirming or changing the settings in [Settings], press [Home] () after closing [Settings].

Messages that Appear without Error Codes

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Address Book is currently in use by another function. Authentication has failed."	The address book is in use by another function, and authentication query is not possible.	Try again later.
"A function which cannot be used with Fold mode was set. The job has been cancelled."	A setting that cannot be specified with folding was specified, and printing was canceled.	Check the setting, and cancel the function that cannot be specified with the fold function.
"A job via the network that was not printed exists because an error occurred. It was stored as a job not printed."	When the error job storing function is enabled, an error occurred in the print job sent via the network and the canceled job was stored.	- Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly. For details about your network environment, consult the network administrator. - The stored document can be printed. page 131 "Printing Documents Stored in the Printer from the Control Panel"
"All the remaining print volume has been allocated to another central managed client(s). The job has been cancelled."	The job was canceled because the usage count information could not be obtained from the Central Management machine.	All job slots are occupied by other devices. Check the status of the client machine.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"An error occurred while printing a job with Background Numbering. The job has been cancelled."	A size that is impossible to print was specified.	Specify a size smaller than 215.9 mm (8.5 inches) wide and 355.6 mm (14.0 inches) long in "Print On:" in the printer driver. When [Same as Original Size] is specified in "Print On:", reduce the size specified in "Print On:" or adjust the size in the application.
"An error occurred while processing an Unauthorized Copy Prevention job. The job was cancelled."	The settings in the printer driver are incorrect.	Check the following in the printer driver: - Is a value smaller than 600 dpi specified in [Resolution]? See "Applying Different Print Settings Depending on the Document Type", User Guide (Full Version). - Is only space(s) entered as the text to use for the background pattern in the unauthorized copy prevention function? - Is Document Server specified as the print method? See "Storing Documents to Print in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).
	Unauthorized copy prevention is given priority in [Settings for Administrator].	Consult the device administrator for the settings of the machine. The machine administrator can change the setting in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Security Pattern/Stamp] ► [Unauthorized Copy Prevention Printing: Printer]. See "Data Management/Maintenance", User Guide (Full Version).
"Auto-registration of user information has failed."	The maximum number of items that can be registered has been exceeded and the authentication information for LDAP authentication or Windows authentication cannot be registered automatically.	Delete a user that is no longer necessary from the address book.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Booklet/Half Fold is not available with the settings. The job has been cancelled."	A setting in which Booklet or Half-fold cannot be performed was specified, and printing was canceled.	Check the setting for the availability of the Booklet or Half-fold function. page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions"
"Cannot access the Memory Storage Device."	An SD card or USB flash memory device is unavailable for use.	- Check that the external media is formatted in FAT16 or FAT32, and write protection is not enabled on the media. - Check that the external media is not corrupted or damaged.
"Cannot store data of this size."	The paper size is too large.	Reduce the paper size of the document to send. The document to send cannot be stored at a custom size.
"Classification Code is incorrect."	A classification code is not specified.	Consult the machine administrator for the classification code, and enter the code in [Classification Code] in "Detailed Settings" on the [Basic] tab ► [Modify] under "Job Type" in the printer driver.
	The document was printed in a printer driver that does not support the classification code.	Request the machine administrator to change the setting of the classification code. Machine administrator: Change [Classification Code] to [Optional] in Web Image Monitor if necessary. See "Managing the Number of Printed Sheets Using the Classification Code", User Guide (Full Version).
"Collate has been cancelled."	The sort function was canceled.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Command Error"	A problem occurred in the data because of the communication status or another reason.	Check that the machine can communicate with the computer properly.
	A printer driver that does not support the machine was used.	Use the printer driver for the machine. Obtain and install the latest version of the driver.
	The print command did not complete correctly.	In the printer driver, specify [Edge Smoothing] on the [Others] tab ► [Special Settings].
"Communication error with central management server has occurred. The job has been cancelled."	The job was canceled because a Central Management communication error occurred.	Check the status of the Central Management machine.
"Compressed Data Error."	Compressed data is corrupted.	• Check that the tool used for creating the compressed data is functioning properly. • Check that the machine can communicate with the computer properly.
"Connection with the machine has failed. Check the machine structure."	The machine is malfunctioning, and [Printer] cannot be used.	• Check whether a message is displayed on the control panel. • Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Data storage error."	Printing a document as Test Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, Store Print, or storing the document in Document Server failed. The hard disk is malfunctioning.	If the message persists even after you have turned the power off and then on, consider repairing the machine.
"Document Server is not available to use. Cannot store."	Use of the Document Server function is restricted.	Consult the user administrator.
"Duplex has been cancelled."	The paper source tray is not specified for duplex printing.	Specify to use the paper tray for duplex printing in [Settings] ► [Tray/Paper Settings] ► [Paper Size/Paper Type].
"Error has occurred."	An error such as a syntactic error has occurred.	Check that the PDF file to print does not have an error.
"Exceeded max. capacity of Document Server. Cannot store."	The hard disk is almost full.	• Reduce the size of the document to send. • Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version). See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Exceeded max. number of files. (Auto)"	The maximum number of Store Print jobs or the maximum number of jobs that can be managed for Hold Print (Auto) documents has been exceeded while storing a document printed by Normal Print as a Hold Print job by the error job storing function.	Erase a Hold Print (Auto) document that is no longer needed. See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).
"Exceeded max. number of files of Document Server. Cannot store."	The number of documents stored in the machine exceeds the maximum number.	Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"Exceeded max. number of pages. (Auto)"	An "exceeded max. number of pages" error occurred while storing a document printed by Normal Print as a Hold Print job by the error job storing function.	• Reduce the number of pages to print. • Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version). See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"Exceeded max. number of pages of Document Server. Cannot store."	The number of pages stored in the machine exceeds the maximum number.	• Reduce the number of pages in the document to send. • Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Exceeded max. pages. Collate is incomplete."	The maximum number of sheets that can be sorted has been exceeded.	Reduce the number of pages to print.
"Exceeded the maximum number of multi-sheet fold. The job has been cancelled."	The maximum number of sheets that can be specified for multi-sheet fold has been exceeded. The multi-sheet fold job was canceled.	Up to three sheets can be folded at a time in multi-sheet fold. Reduce the number of sheets to copy, and set the originals again.
"Exceeded the maximum unit count for Print Volume Use. The job has been cancelled."	When the print volume is limited, printing was canceled because the print volume of a user exceeded the upper limit allotted for the user.	For details about the print volume use limitation, consult the user administrator. The user administrator can clear the counter or change the limit on the print volume. See "Checking the Counter of the Machine for Each Color Category", User Guide (Full Version). See "Specifying Maximum Print Volume Use of Each User", User Guide (Full Version).
"File system is full."	The file system is full, and the PDF file cannot be printed.	Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version). See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"Hardware Problem: HDD"	An error is occurring on the hard disk of the machine.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"Hardware Problem: USB"	An error has occurred on the USB interface.	If the message persists even after you have turned the power off and then on, consider repairing the machine.
"Hardware Problem: Ethernet"	An error has occurred in the Ethernet interface.	

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Hardware Problem: Wireless Card"	An error has occurred in the Wireless LAN board.	Turn off the power of the machine, check that the Wireless LAN board is correctly installed in the machine, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power" If the message persists even after you have turned the power off and then on, consider repairing the machine.
"HDD is full."	The area reserved for forms or fonts in PostScript 3 is full.	Delete a registered form or font that is no longer necessary.
"HDD is full. (Auto)"	An overflow error occurred in the hard disk while storing a document printed by Normal Print as a Hold Print job by the error job storing function.	- Reduce the size of the document to print. - Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version). See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"I/O buffer overflow."	An overflow has occurred in the receive buffer.	- Reduce the transmission data. - Increase the value in [I/O Buffer] on [Settings] ► [Printer Settings] ► [Host Interface].
"Information for user authentication is already registered for another user."	In LDAP authentication, the same name is registered under different IDs on different servers, and duplicate names (account names) occurred such as when switching the domain (server).	Consult the user administrator. User administrator: Delete the corresponding user from the address book, and register the user again after resolving the duplicate names on different servers.
"Insufficient Memory"	The amount of available memory is insufficient.	Decrease [Resolution] in the printer driver. See "Applying Different Print Settings Depending on the Document Type", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Load following paper in XXX. To force print, select another tray and press [Continue]." (XXX indicates the tray name)	The paper tray specified in the printer driver has no paper loaded.	- To proceed with printing after changing the paper setting, select a tray and press [Continue]. However, when Staple, Cover Sheet, Slip Sheet, Chaptering, or Designate is specified, or when Duplex printing is specified on a paper tray that does not support the function, printing cannot be performed. When Sort is specified, only one copy of the document is printed. - To proceed with printing on the specified paper, load the paper in the tray. page 171 "Loading Paper into the Paper Tray"
"Memory Overflow"	The insufficient memory error has occurred while printing from the printer driver (PCL 6).	In the printer driver, specify [Edge Smoothing] on the [Others] tab ► [Special Settings].
"Memory Retrieval Error"	The data in the memory could not be retrieved.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"No response from the server. Authentication has failed."	In LDAP or Windows authentication, a timeout error occurred while submitting an authentication query to the server.	- Consult the administrator of the authentication server. - When using the Active Directory of the Windows server for LDAP Authentication, change [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Authentication/Charge] ► [Administrator Authentication/User Authentication/App Auth.] ► [LDAP Search] ► "Follow Referrals on LDAP Server" to [Inactive].
"Output tray has been changed."	The destination to deliver the output paper was changed because of the paper size limitation of the output destination.	Specify the correct destination to deliver the output paper.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Paper size and/or type mismatched or no ppr. in Bypass Tray."	The paper size or paper type specified in the printer driver does not match the paper settings, in the machine, for the bypass tray.	Specify [Driver/Command] in [Settings] ► [Tray/Paper Settings] ► [Printer] ► [Tray Setting Priority] ► [Bypass Tray].
"Paper size and type are mismatched. Select another tray from the following and press [Continue]. To cancel job, press [Job Reset]. Paper size and type can also be changed in User Tools."	The paper tray loaded with paper of the size or type specified in the printer driver is not available.	- To proceed with printing after changing the paper setting, select a tray and press [Continue]. When Staple, Cover Sheet, Slip Sheet, Chaptering, or Designate is specified, or when Duplex printing is specified on a paper tray that does not support the function, printing cannot be performed. When Sort is specified, only one copy of the document is printed. - To proceed with printing on the specified paper, load the paper and then check that the paper size and type are correctly specified in [Settings] ► [Tray/Paper Settings]. page 171 "Loading Paper into the Paper Tray"
"Parallel I/F board has a problem."	An error has occurred in the parallel interface.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power" If the message persists even after you have turned the power off and then on, consider repairing the machine.
"Printer font error."	There is a problem in the font file of the machine.	Consider repairing the machine.
"Print overrun."	A page image is discarded while printing the page.	Decrease [Resolution] in the printer driver. See "Applying Different Print Settings Depending on the Document Type", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Punch has been cancelled."	The Punch function was canceled because the staple position is specified incorrectly.	Check the orientation of the paper and print data, and the specified punch position. See "Punching Holes on Printed Pages", User Guide (Full Version).
"Receiving data failed."	Transmission of data was canceled.	Send the data again.
"Sending data failed."	Transmission of data from the printer driver was canceled.	Check that the computer is operating normally.
"Staple error occurred. The job has been cancelled."	The number of sheets that can be stapled was exceeded, and printing was canceled.	Check the number of sheets that can be stapled on the finisher in use. page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions"
"Staple has been cancelled."	The Staple function was canceled because too many printed sheets were specified to be stapled.	Check the specification of the finisher in use, and specify the setting accordingly. - Number of sheets that can be stapled together page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions" - Staple position that can be specified on different paper orientation and print data orientation See "Stapling Printed Pages", User Guide (Full Version).
	A malfunction occurred temporarily on the machine.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"The job was cancelled because the specified settings are not applicable for Booklet."	A condition in which binding cannot be performed was specified, and printing was canceled.	Check the binding condition.
"The print job has been cancelled because capture file(s) could not be stored: Exceeded max. memory."	The amount of available space on the hard disk became low while saving the capture data.	• Reduce the size of the document to send. • Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version). See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"The print job has been cancelled because capture file(s) could not be stored: Exceeded max. number of files."	The number of documents stored in the machine exceeded the maximum number while saving the capture data.	Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"The print job has been cancelled because capture file(s) could not be stored: Exceeded max. number of pages per file."	The number of pages stored in the machine exceeded the maximum number while saving the capture data.	• Reduce the number of pages in the document to send. • Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"The selected paper size is not supported. This job has been cancelled."	A paper size that cannot be fed on the machine was specified and printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function that was activated.	Print the document on paper of a size that can be fed on the machine.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"The selected paper type is not supported. This job has been cancelled."	A paper type that cannot be fed on the machine was specified and printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function that was activated.	Print the document on paper of a type that can be fed on the machine.
"You do not have a privilege to use this function. This job has been cancelled."	Authentication information is not registered correctly in the printer driver.	Specify the authentication information in the printer driver. For the authentication information, consult the user administrator. See "Specifying Login Information in the Printer Driver", User Guide (Full Version).
	The user registered in the printer driver does not have permission to use the printer function.	Consult the user administrator. The user administrator can change the access permissions in the address book. See "Confirming the Available Functions", User Guide (Full Version).
"Z-fold error."	A setting in which Z-fold cannot be performed was specified, and the Z-fold function was canceled.	Check the tray, paper orientation and print data orientation settings, and the specified position for postprocessing.

Messages that Appear with Error Codes

Check the system configuration list or print settings list. The details of the error may also be printed in the list.

See "Settings for Administrator", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"84: Error"	The amount of available work area is insufficient for processing images.	Reduce the transmission data.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"86: Error"	The parameter in the control code is incorrect.	Specify the correct parameter.
"92: Error" (displayed in the error history)	Printing is canceled from the control panel.	To perform printing, operate the control panel again.
"98: Error"	Accessing the hard disk failed.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"99: Error"	When printing a file from an SD card or USB flash memory device, the file to print is in an unsupported format or corrupt.	Check the data to print.
"BAI: The job was cancelled because the authentication setting(s) has been changed."	The authentication setting was changed during printing, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	Check the authentication setting.
"BAJ: The job was cancelled because of a functional problem with the optional finisher."	A peripheral equipment had a problem, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	Contact your service representative.
"CB: The job was cancelled because the password is incorrect."	The entered password was incorrect, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	Confirm the correct password for the document and enter it.
"CC: The job was cancelled because the user ID is invalid."	The user ID was invalid, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	Enter the correct login username. Confirm the login username with the user administrator.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"CD: The job was cancelled because of an error with PS3/PDF."	A postscript language error occurred in PS3 or PDF printing, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	Check if there is a problem with the printing data.
"CE: The job was cancelled because of an error with PCL5e/XL."	An error occurred in PCL6 printing, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	Check that the machine can communicate properly with the PC.
"CK: The job was cancelled because of an error with XPS."	An error occurred in XPS printing, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	Check that the machine can communicate properly with the PC.
"CM: The job was cancelled because of a timeout error with PS3/PDF."	A timeout error occurred in PostScript 3 or PDF printing, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	• Check that the machine can communicate properly with the PC. • PostScript 3 Check the following setting items. When [Use Machine Setting(s)] is selected, set the waiting time longer. When [Use Driver/Command] is selected, set the waiting time specified by the command longer. Check the setting of [Settings] ► [Printer Settings] ► [PS Menu] ► [Job Timeout].
"CN: The job was cancelled because the print settings specified by PS3 are not consistent with the machine settings."	Some of [Printer Settings] on the print data did not match the machine settings, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	Check that the printer settings specified in the print data match the settings in [Settings] ► [Printer Settings] ► [PS Menu].
"CO: The job was cancelled because of a font error with PS3/PDF."	A font error occurred in PostScript 3 or PDF printing, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	Register the required fonts.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"CP: The job was cancelled because of insufficient memory error with PS3/PDF."	An insufficient memory error occurred in PostScript 3 or PDF printing, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	Specify [Font Priority] in [Settings] ► [Printer Settings] ► [System] ► [Memory] ► [Memory Usage].
"EB: The job was cancelled because [Restrict Direct Print Jobs] has been set to [Cancel All Direct Print Jobs]."	A printing job has been set to be canceled, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	Contact your machine administrator. Machine administrator can change the setting in [Settings] ► [Printer Settings] ► [Data Management/Maintenance] ► [Print Jobs] ► [Restrict Direct Print Jobs]."
"EC: The job was cancelled because of a failure to store and skip an error job."	A document has been set to be stored or canceled when an error occurs and it did not operate, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	- Fix the error that occurred. - You can check the settings of the operation when an error occurs in [Settings] ► [Printer Settings] ► [System] ► [Error Action] ► [Store and Skip Errored Job].
"ED: The specified paper size is not valid for 2 sided print and therefore Magazine finishing is not available. The job was cancelled."	A paper size that cannot be used for 2 sided print was specified and [Magazine] finishing was not available, so printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function.	When specifying [Magazine], check and specify the paper size that corresponds to 2 sided print. page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions"
"EE: There are mixed paper sizes therefore Magazine finishing is not available. The job was cancelled."	Two or more paper sizes were used and [Magazine] finishing was not available, so printing was cancelled by the auto job cancel function.	When specifying [Magazine], use sheets of the same size.
"EF: The job was cancelled because the specified paper size is not valid for 2 sided print."	A paper size that is not valid for 2 sided print was specified, so printing was cancelled by the auto job cancel function.	Check the paper size that corresponds to 2 sided print. page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions"

When a Message Appears While Using the Scanner Function

Note

- When confirming or changing the settings in [Settings], press [Home] () after closing [Settings].

Messages that Appear on the Control Panel

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"All the pages are detected as blank. No file was created."	The original was placed with the wrong side facing down when [Delete Blank Page] or [Delete Blank Page] in OCR is specified.	- When scanning on the exposure glass, place the original with the side to scan facing down. - When scanning on the ADF, place the original with the side to scan facing up.
	All pages in the scanned original were determined to be blank when [Delete Blank Page] is specified.	Decrease the value specified in the following setting items. [Settings] ► [Scanner Settings] ► [Scan] ► [Blank Page Detection] ► [Blank Page Detection Level]
	All pages in the scanned original were determined to be blank when [Delete Blank Page] in OCR is specified.	Change the following setting items. [Settings] ► [Scanner Settings] ► [Scan] ► [Blank Page Detection] ► [OCR Scanned PDF: Blank Page Sensitivity] to [Sensitivity Level 1]

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication with the destination has failed. Check settings. To check the current status, press [Scan Files Status]."	The user name/ password of SMTP authentication specified when sending the e-mail are incorrect.	Select the destination in the address book, press [Edit], and check the setting in [Destinations] tab ► [Email Address].
	The user ID/password specified on the destination folder in Send to Folder are incorrect.	- Select the forwarding destination in the address book, press [Edit], and check the information registered in [Destinations] tab ► [Folder] ► [Folder Authentication Info]. - Adding "@domain-name" behind the user name may resolve the problem. - When a login password is not specified on your computer, specify a login password on the computer and register it to the machine.
"Cannot access the Memory Storage Device."	An SD card or USB flash memory device is unavailable for use.	- Check that the external media is formatted in FAT16 or FAT32, and write encryption or protection is not enabled on the media. - Check that the external media is not corrupted or damaged.
"Cannot detect original size. Select scan size."	An original is not placed correctly on the machine.	Place the original correctly. When you place an original on the exposure glass, the machine detects the original size by opening and closing the ADF. Open the cover or ADF by more than 30 degrees when placing an original.
	An original with a difficult-to-detect size even in the regular size is placed on the machine.	When scanning an original with a difficult-to-detect size, specify [Send Settings] ► [Scan Size]. See "Sizes Detectable with Auto Paper Select", User Guide (Full Version).
	An original with a custom size is placed on the machine.	When scanning an original with a custom size, specify the original size in [Send Settings] ► [Scan Size] ► [Custom Size].

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Cannot find the specified path. Please check the settings."	The machine or the computer is not connected to the network correctly.	Check that the machine or the computer is connected to the network correctly. For details about your network environment, consult the network administrator.
	The computer name or folder name specified in the path name is incorrect.	Register the computer name and folder name again.
	The firewall function is enabled on the computer.	In the firewall function on the computer, register the machine IP address and the port to use for sending files as exceptions. You can check the IP address in [Check Status] ► "Network". For details about the ports, see the following: page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions"
"Check original's orientation."	The original is placed in the wrong orientation.	Depending on the combination of the specified settings, the orientation to set the original differs. Be sure to place the original in the correct orientation. See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Connection with PC has failed. Check the settings."	The machine or the computer is not connected to the network correctly.	Check that the machine or the computer is connected to the network correctly. For details about your network environment, consult the network administrator.
	The computer name or folder name specified in the path name is incorrect.	Register the computer name and folder name again.
	The firewall function is enabled on the computer.	In the firewall function on the computer, register the machine IP address and the port to use for sending files as exceptions. You can check the IP address in [Check Status] ► "Network". For details about the ports, see the following: page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions"
"Connection with the destination has failed. Check the settings. Entered path name might be incorrect, or firewall and security settings might be blocking network connectivity."	The firewall function is enabled on the computer.	Enable file and printer sharing in the firewall function on your computer.
"Exceeded max. data capacity. Check the resolution or ratio, then press [Start] again."	The data scanned by specifying [Scan Ratio] ► [Specify Size] exceeds the limit.	• Decrease [Send Settings] ► [Resolution]. • Specify a smaller paper size in [Send Settings] ► [Scan Ratio] ► [Specify Size].
"Exceeded max. data capacity. Check the scanning resolution, then XXX." (procedure described in place of XXX)	A large size original was scanned at a high resolution, and the resulting data size exceeds the limit.	• Decrease [Send Settings] ► [Resolution]. • Specify a smaller size in [Send Settings] ► [Scan Size].

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Exceeded max. email size. Sending email has been cancelled. Check [Max. Email Size] in Scanner Features."	The file size per page has exceeded the maximum e-mail size specified in [Maximum Email Size].	- Specify a lower value in [Send Settings] ► [Resolution], or select a smaller paper size in [Send Settings] ► [Scan Ratio] ► [Specify Size]. - You can change the [Maximum Email Size] setting on [Settings] ► [Scanner Settings] ► [Sending Settings] ► [Email (Size)]. To divide an e-mail that exceeds the maximum size, specify [Yes (per Page)] or [Yes (per Max. Size)] in [Divide & Send Email].
"Exceeded max. number of alphanumeric characters."	The number of entered characters has exceeded the maximum.	Check the maximum number of characters. page 334 "The Setting Values of the Transmission Function"
"Failed to connect to the destination. Please contact the administrator to check the following. *The correct root certificate is registered to this machine and destination. *The root certificate check function is not enabled by mistake."	Email was sent to the destination without an installed certificate of the destination server when "Root Certificate Check" was set to [Active].	Contact your network administrator. Network administrator should install the root certificate of the destination server in Web Image Monitor if required, or set "Root Certificate Check" to [Inactive]. See "Controlling Access to Untrusted Websites from the Control Panel", User Guide (Full Version).
"Insufficient memory in the memory storage device."	There is no free space available on the SD card or USB flash memory device, or the file could not be saved due to insufficient space on the media.	Change the external media. When scanning an original in the divide-document or single-page mode, the saved data may not contain all pages in the original. Change the external media and press [Retry] to resume saving the remaining data.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Not all of the image will be scanned. Check the ratio and then press [Start] again."	The scaling factor specified in [Scan Ratio] is too large.	Specify a smaller value in [Send Settings] ► [Scan Ratio].
	The paper size specified in [Scan Ratio] ► [Specify Size] requires a reduction value smaller than 25%.	Specify a paper size for which a reduction ratio greater than 25% is specified in [Send Settings] ► [Scan Ratio] ► [Specify Size].
"Programmed. Cannot program the destination(s) that is not programmed in the address book."	A folder specified by Manual Entry is included among the programmed destinations.	Register the destination in the address book of the machine, and then register it to a program.
"Programmed. Cannot program the folder destination(s) with protection code(s)."	A destination specified with a protection code is included among the programmed destinations.	- You cannot program a destination specified with a protection code. Specify this destination individually. - To program this destination, cancel the protection code and then register the destination to a program. See "Using the Protection Function to Prevent the Misuse of Addresses", User Guide (Full Version).
"SMTP authentication email address and administrator email address mismatch."	The SMTP authentication e-mail address is not registered in the administrator e-mail address.	Register the SMTP authentication e-mail address in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Send (Email/Folder)] ► [Email] ► [Administrator's Email Address].
"Some invalid destination(s) contained. Do you want to select only valid destination(s)?"	The group contains an e-mail address.	When sending data to a destination other than an e-mail address, press [Select].

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"The program is recalled. Cannot recall the folder destination(s) with protection code(s)."	A folder destination specified with a protection code is included among the programmed destinations.	- You cannot recall a destination specified with a protection code in a program. Specify this destination individually. - To program this destination, cancel the protection code and then register the destination to a program. See "Using the Protection Function to Prevent the Misuse of Addresses", User Guide (Full Version).
"The size of the scanned data is too small. Check the resolution and the ratio and then press [Start] again."	The data scanned by specifying [Scan Ratio] ► [Specify Size] is too small.	- Increase [Send Settings] ► [Resolution]. - Specify a larger paper size in [Send Settings] ► [Scan Ratio] ► [Specify Size].
"Transmission has failed. Insufficient memory in the destination hard disk. To check the current status, press [Scan Files Status]."	The amount of available hard disk space on the destination computer, SMTP server, or FTP server is insufficient.	Check that the amount of free space is sufficient.
"Transmission has failed. To check the current status, press [Scan Files Status]."	A network error occurred while transferring the data due to a busy network or another reason.	If the same message is displayed after scanning the original again, consult the administrator.

Messages that Appear on the Computer

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Any of Login User Name, Login Password or Driver Encryption Key is incorrect."	The login user name or password entered in [General User Authentication] is incorrect.	Enter the correct login user name and password in [General User Authentication] that is displayed after clicking [Scan]. For the login user name and password, consult the user administrator.
	The driver encryption key is not registered correctly in the TWAIN driver.	Register the driver encryption key on [Details] ► [Authenticate] tab in the TWAIN driver. For the driver encryption key, consult the network administrator.
"The authentication password and/or authentication algorithm may be incorrect, or the machine does not support the authentication algorithm. Please check."	The SNMPv3 authentication information registered in Network Connection Tool does not match the information of the machine.	Consult the network administrator for the SNMPv3 authentication information, and change the information registered in Network Connection Tool. See "Installing the TWAIN Driver", User Guide (Full Version).
"Authentication succeeded. However, the access privileges for scanner function has been denied."	The logged-in user does not have access privileges to use the scanner function.	Consult the user administrator. The user administrator can change the access permissions in the address book. See "Confirming the Available Functions", User Guide (Full Version).
"Cannot add any more scanning mode."	The maximum number of scanning modes that can be registered exceeds the maximum number (100).	Delete scanning modes that are no longer necessary.
"Cannot connect to the scanner. Check the network Access Mask settings in User Tools."	An access mask is specified.	Consult your administrator.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Failed to connect to the destination. Please contact the administrator to check the following. *The correct root certificate is registered to this machine and destination. *The root certificate check function is not enabled by mistake."	The firewall function is enabled on the computer.	Configure the firewall function of the computer to allow communication of the application used, or disable the firewall function.
"Cannot detect the paper size of the original. Specify the scanning size."	The original is not placed correctly on the machine.	When you place an original on the exposure glass, the machine detects the original size by opening and closing the ADF. Open the cover or ADF by more than 30 degrees when placing an original.
	An original with a difficult-to-detect size even in the regular size is placed on the machine.	When scanning an original with a difficult-to-detect size, specify [Send Settings] ► [Scan Size]. See "Sizes Detectable with Auto Paper Select", User Guide (Full Version).
	An original with a custom size is placed on the machine.	When scanning an original with a custom size, specify the original size in [Send Settings] ► [Scan Size] ► [Custom Size].
"Cannot specify any more scanning area."	The maximum number of scanning areas that can be registered exceeds the maximum number (100).	Delete scanning areas that are no longer necessary.
"Communication error has occurred on the network."	A communication error has occurred on the network.	Check that the settings for the communication protocol (TCP/IP) are configured correctly on the computer.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Entered User Code is not registered or you do not have access privileges to use the scanner function, please contact your administrator."	The correct user code is not registered in the TWAIN drive when User Code authentication is specified on the machine.	Register the User Code on [Details] ► [Authenticate] tab in the TWAIN driver. For the User Code, consult the user administrator.
	The User Code registered in the TWAIN driver is not assigned with the privileges to use the scanner function.	Consult the user administrator. The user administrator can change the access permissions in the address book. See "Confirming the Available Functions", User Guide (Full Version).
"Error has occurred in the scanner."	The scan condition specified in the application exceeds the range that can be specified on the machine.	Specify the scan condition within the range that can be specified on the machine. page 295 "List of Specifications for Standard Functions"
	A malfunction is occurring in the driver.	- Restart the application, and perform scanning again. - Install the TWAIN driver again.
	A malfunction is temporarily occurring on the machine.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"Error has occurred in the scanner driver."	An error is occurring in the driver or operating system.	Restart the computer.
	There is a problem with the network environment.	Check that the computer is connected to the network correctly and in an environment where the TCP/IP protocol can be used.
"Fatal error has occurred in the scanner."	An unrecoverable error is occurring on the machine.	Consider repairing the machine.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Insufficient memory. Close all other applications, then restart scanning."	Other applications are running on the computer, and the amount of free memory is insufficient.	- Close applications on the computer. - If the same message is displayed when no other applications are running after starting the computer, uninstall the TWAIN driver, restart the computer, and then install the TWAIN driver again.
"Insufficient memory. Reduce the scanning area."	The memory allocated for the scanner function is insufficient.	- Reduce the scan size or resolution. You may be able to resolve the error also by reducing the brightness value when Duotone (black and white) or a high resolution is specified. - Specify [No Compression] on [Initial Settings] ► [Compression] tab in the TWAIN driver.
"Invalid Winsock version. Please use version 1.1 or higher."	Winsock is corrupted.	Restore Winsock on the computer.
"Scanner is not available. Check the scanner connection status."	The power of the machine is not turned on, or the machine is not connected to the network correctly.	Check that the machine is turned on, and connected to the network correctly.
	The firewall function is enabled on the computer.	Configure the firewall function of the computer to allow communication of the application used, or disable the firewall function.
	The IP address of the machine could not be resolved from the host name.	Check that the host name of the machine is configured in Network Connection Tool that is installed with the TWAIN driver. See "Installing the TWAIN Driver", User Guide (Full Version).
	The IPv6 address could not be obtained when only IPv6 is enabled on the machine.	Log in to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode, and select [Active] in [IPv4] ► "LLMNR" under [Device Management] ► [Configuration] ► "Network".

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Scanner is not available on the specified device."	The TWAIN scanner function is disabled on the machine.	The TWAIN scanner function cannot be used.
"Scanner is not ready. Check the scanner and the options."	The ADF is open.	Close the ADF.
"Scanning has been aborted because memory in Mainframe became full."	The amount of available space on the hard disk of the machine is insufficient when scanning is performed with the [Read-ahead] check box selected in the TWAIN driver.	• Clear the [Read-ahead] check box in the TWAIN driver. • Erase documents that are no longer needed from the machine.
"The device's authentication service cannot be performed."	Authentication cannot be performed because the authentication service is starting up or busy.	• When User Code or Basic authentication is specified, wait a while until processing the machine address is completed. • When Windows or LDAP authentication is specified, wait a while until the server becomes ready for processing. If authentication is not possible even after waiting for a while, consult your administrator.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"There is no response from the scanner. There may be a number of reasons for this, e.g. the data between the computer and scanner has been lost because of an increase in network traffic, the firewall in the virus protection software may be activated, or there might be problems with the hardware etc. If you can not fix this problem, please call service."	The network is busy.	Wait a while.
	The firewall function is enabled on the computer.	Configure the firewall function of the computer to allow communication of the application used, or disable the firewall function.
	The machine or the computer is not connected to the network correctly.	Check that the machine or the computer is connected to the network correctly.
"User Authentication in SNMPv3 connection has failed."	The authentication information is registered incorrectly in Network Connection Tool when SNMPv3 encrypted communication is enabled on the machine.	Register the SNMPv3 authentication information in Network Connection Tool that is installed on the computer with the TWAIN driver. For the SNMPv3 authentication information, consult your network administrator. See "Installing the TWAIN Driver", User Guide (Full Version).

When Other Messages Appear

Note

- When confirming or changing the settings in [Settings], press [Home]  after closing [Settings].

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Administrator Authentication for User Management must be set to on before this selection can be made."	The User Management privilege is disabled in the administrator authentication management.	When specifying Basic, Windows, or LDAP authentication, configure the User Management privilege in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Authentication/Charge] ► [Administrator Authentication/User Authentication/App Auth.] ► [Administrator Authentication Management]. See "Registering Administrators Before Using the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).
"Destination list / machine settings are updated. Selected destinations or function settings have been cleared. Please re-select the settings."	A destination is being registered and devices are being configured using Web Image Monitor.	Wait until the message disappears and do not turn off the power of the machine. You may not be able to perform operations for a while depending on the number of destinations being registered.
"Failed to read the PDF file."	The user attempted to display a PDF file that is not supported by the Web browser of the machine.	The Web browser of the machine supports the PDF versions and encryption levels shown below. Other PDF files cannot be displayed. - PDF version: 1.3-1.7 - PDF encryption level: 128-bit AES, 256-bit AES
"Firmware update will start. Press [OK]. It will start automatically after 30 seconds."	A firmware update is available, and the machine is about to perform an update.	It is recommended to apply the update, but you can stop the updating process by pressing [Stop] within 30 seconds after the message is displayed. Do not turn off the power of the machine while the updating process is in progress.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Incompatible USB device has been connected. Check the USB device."	The machine accidentally detected a USB cable as unusable because dust accumulated in the USB port.	- Clean the USB ports on the back side and the back left side of the machine after turning off the power of the machine. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power" - If the problem persists, consult your service representative.
"Internal cooling fan is active."	The fan installed in the vent for cooling the interior of the machine became active after a large number of pages has been printed.	You may hear a rotating noise while the fan is active, but you can continue using the machine as usual.
"Output Tray is full. Remove paper."	The output tray is full.	Remove the paper from the output tray. When the finisher tray is specified as the output destination, press [Stop] to pause printing and then remove the output paper to prevent paper from falling off the tray.
"Problems with the wireless board. Please call service."	The Wireless LAN board can be accessed, but an error has been detected.	Turn off the power of the machine, check that the Wireless LAN board is correctly installed in the machine, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power" If the message persists even after you have turned the power off and then on, consider repairing the machine.
"Updating the destination list... Please wait. Specified destination(s) or sender's name has been cleared."	A destination is being registered using Web Image Monitor.	Wait until the message disappears and do not turn off the power of the machine. You may not be able to perform operations for a while depending on the number of destinations being registered.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Updating the destination list has failed. Try again?"	A network error occurred.	Check the connection between the machine and the computer.
	Anti-virus software or a firewall function is running on the computer.	Add the destination list program to the exception list in the anti-virus software on the computer, or register the machine IP address to the exception list in the firewall function. You can check the IP address in [Check Status] ► "Network".
"You do not have the privileges to use this function."	The logged-in user does not have the privileges to use the specified function.	Consult the user administrator. The user administrator can change the access permissions in the address book. See "Taking Measures to Prevent Information Leaks", User Guide (Full Version).
	Changing the setting is not allowed under the administrative privileges granted to the logged-in user.	Check the administrative privilege required for changing the specified setting. See "Registering Administrators Before Using the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

Messages that Appear When Machine Login Fails

Check the error code displayed with the "Authentication has failed." message, and taken the necessary action.

Note

- The letter at the beginning of the error code indicates the type of authentication specified on the machine.
 - B: Basic authentication
 - W: Windows authentication
 - L: LDAP authentication

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L0103-000	An operation in the TWAIN supporting application was performed from the computer while a user was logged in to the machine or performing the login procedure.	Check whether another user is logged in to the machine, and then perform the operation.
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L0104-000	An incorrect password was entered.	Enter the correct password.
	The Driver Encryption Key is not registered correctly in the TWAIN driver.	Consult the network administrator whether the Driver Encryption Key is required, and configure the driver accordingly. See "Specifying Login Information in the Printer Driver", User Guide (Full Version). See "Specifying Login Information in the LAN-Fax Driver", User Guide (Full Version). The network administrator can check the setting of "Driver Encryption Key: Encryption Strength" in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Security] ► [Extended Security Settings].
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L0206-002	An incorrect login user name or password was entered.	Enter the correct login user name and password.
	A user has attempted to log in to the functions that can be accessed only by the administrator such as [Settings] when [Application Authentication Management] is specified.	The user needs to log in from the application login screen.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L0206-003	":" or another character that cannot be used in a login user name was entered.	• Enter the correct login user name. • Change the user name if it contains a space, ":" or other unusable characters.
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L0207-001	Web Image Monitor or another method was used to edit or create a backup of the address book.	Wait a while.
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L0208-000 B/W/L0208-002	The account is locked because the number of failed login attempts has exceeded the limit.	Request the user administrator to unlock the account.
"Authentication has failed." L0307-001	Web Image Monitor or another method was used to edit or create a backup of the address book.	Try again later.
"Authentication has failed." W0400-102	Kerberos authentication has failed because the server was not responsive.	Check whether the server is operating normally.
"Authentication has failed." W0400-200	Available resources are insufficient due to too many authentication requests.	Try again later.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." W0400-202	sAMAccountName was used as the login user name when a user in the child domain logged in under a parent-child domain environment, and ldap_bind failed.	Use UserPrincipalName as the login user name.
	The SSL settings specified on the authentication server and the device do not match.	Check whether the SSL settings specified on the authentication server and the device match.
"Authentication has failed." L0400-210	The login name attribute is not specified, or an attribute on which the information cannot be obtained is specified.	Check whether [Login Name Attribute] is specified correctly. See "Verifying Users to Operate the Machine (User Authentication)", User Guide (Full Version).
"Authentication has failed." W/L0406-003	":" or other characters that cannot be used in a login user name was entered.	• Enter the correct login user name. • Change the user name if it contains a space, ":" or other unusable characters.
"Authentication has failed." W0406-101	Too many requests for authentication occurred at one time.	Try again later. If the problem persists, check whether the machine is under an authentication attack. The attack status can be checked by the screen message, in the system log, or in the e-mail notification sent to the administrator.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." W0406-107	A user group cannot be obtained.	Check whether the group name registered on the machine is correct and whether the DC settings are configured correctly. * ¹
	Kerberos Authentication has failed.	Check whether the realm name registered on the clock at the KDC (key distribution center) and the clock of the device are synchronized. * ³
	No connection is established to the authentication server.	Enter the server IP address in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Network/Interface] ► [Ping Command] to check whether a connection can be established to the server.
	The domain name is incorrect or cannot be resolved.	Check whether the domain name registered on the machine is correct and whether the name can be resolved. * ²
	The login user name or password is incorrect.	Check the login user name and/or password of the user registered on the server.
"Authentication has failed." L0406-200	Too many requests for authentication occurred at one time.	Try again later. If the problem persists, check whether the machine is under an authentication attack. The attack status can be checked by the screen message, in the system log, or in the e-mail notification sent to the administrator.
"Authentication has failed." L0406-201	[Off] is specified in the authentication settings of the LDAP server.	Select the server in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Authentication/Charge] ► [Administrator Authentication/User Authentication/App Auth.] ► [Register/Change/Delete LDAP Server], and then press [Register/Change] and set [Authentication] to a setting other than [Off].

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." L0406-202 L0406-203	The LDAP authentication settings or LDAP server settings are incorrect.	Check whether the LDAP authentication settings or LDAP server settings are correctly configured.* ⁴ Check whether the SSL settings are supported on the LDAP server.
	The login user name or password is incorrect.	Enter the correct login user name and password. Change the login user name if it exceeds 128 bytes in length or contains a space, ":" or other unusable character.
	The simplified authentication mode is incorrectly used.	Check whether the server name, login user name, password, and information entered into the search filter are correct. Note that authentication cannot be performed if obtaining DN of the login user name under the representative account fails in the simple authentication mode.
"Authentication has failed." L0406-204	Kerberos Authentication has failed.	Check whether the realm name registered on the clock at the KDC (key distribution center) and the clock of the device are synchronized.* ³
"Authentication has failed." W/L0409-000	There was no response returned from the authentication server, and an authentication timeout error occurred.	Check the status of the network and the server to use for authentication.
"Authentication has failed." W/L0511-000 W0517-000	The user registered on the machine has the same name as another user distinguished by the unique attribute of the authentication server.	• Delete the older user that is redundant, or change the login name. • If the message is displayed after switching the authentication server, delete the user on the old server.
"Authentication has failed." W/L0606-004	A user name that cannot be specified in the login user name was specified.	Do not use "other", "admin", "supervisor", or "HIDE*" in user account names.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." W/L0607-001	Web Image Monitor or another method was used to edit or create a backup of the address book.	Wait a while.
"Authentication has failed." W/L0612-005	The number of users registered in the address book has reached the upper limit, and auto-registration failed.	Ask the user administrator to delete users that are no longer needed from the address book.
"Authentication has failed." W/L0707-001	Web Image Monitor or another method was used to edit or create a backup of the address book.	Wait a while.
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L09XX-019	Auto-registration of a user on the server machine has failed when authentication was performed on the client machine using Central Management.	• Check the network communication between the client and server machines. • Registration cannot be performed while the address book of the server machine is being edited.

*1 When obtaining user groups, check the following:

- The user account that can obtain user groups is sAMAccountName (user). Do not use UserPrincipalName (user@domain.xxx.co.jp) as the user name.
- Check whether the name in "Group" is correctly specified including the case-sensitivity in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Authentication/Charge] ► [Administrator Authentication/User Authentication/App Auth.] ► [User Authentication Management] ► [Windows Authentication].
- Select the user in the address book, press [Edit], and then check that [Unavailable] is specified for each function under the [User Management / Others] tab ► [User Management] ► [Available Functions / Applications].
- Check whether "Global Scope" is specified as the scope of the group in a property for the user group created in DC, and the group type specified in "Security". Also check whether an account is registered to the user group that has been created. If more than one DC exists, check whether a trust relationship between DCs is established.

*2 To resolve the domain name, see the following:

- Check whether [Domain Name Configuration] and [DNS Configuration] or [WINS Configuration] is specified correctly in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Network/Interface].
- Enter the IP address in [Domain Name Configuration] to check the connection. If authentication can be performed using the IP address, check [DNS Configuration] or [WINS Configuration] again.
- If authentication by IP address is not possible, check whether LM/NTLM is set to be denied in the domain controller security policy or domain security policy. Also check that the port is not closed in the firewall between the device and the domain controller or in the firewall settings of the domain controller. When the Windows firewall is enabled, create a new rule that allows communication on port 137 and port 139 in "Advanced" of the Windows firewall. Open the TCP/IP properties from the network connection properties, select the "Enable NetBIOS Over TCP/IP" check box on [Advanced] ► [WINS] tab, and open port 137.

*3 For Kerberos authentication, check the following:

- Check that "Realm Name", "KDC Server Name", "Domain Name" are specified correctly in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Authentication/Charge] ► [Administrator Authentication/User Authentication/App Auth.] ► [Register/Change/Delete Realm]. Enter "Realm Name" in upper case.
- Configure the setting so that the difference in time between the clocks on KDC and device is less than five minutes. The clock on the machine can be adjusted in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Date/Time/Timer] ► [Date/Time] ► [Set Time].
- Kerberos authentication fails if auto-obtaining of KDC in Windows authentication fails. When auto-obtaining cannot be activated, switch to manual.

*4 For LDAP settings, check the following:

- Check whether the LDAP server is correctly specified in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Authentication/Charge] ► [Administrator Authentication/User Authentication/App Auth.] ► [User Authentication Management] ► [LDAP Authentication].
- Check that the representative account is registered in the following setting items, and then execute [Connection Test]. Select the server in [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Authentication/Charge] ► [Administrator Authentication/User Authentication/App Auth.] ► [Register/Change/Delete LDAP Server], press [Register/Change] and set [Authentication] to [Kerberos Authentication]

See "Registering the LDAP Server", User Guide (Full Version).

- If the connection test fails, check whether [Domain Name Configuration] and [DNS Configuration] or [WINS Configuration] is specified correctly on [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Network/Interface].

Messages that Appear When Logging in to the Machine Using an IC Card Fails

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." *0150-401	The card is locked because the number of times an incorrect PIN code was entered exceeds the limit.	Unlock the card.
"Authentication has failed." *0151-401	An incorrect PIN code was entered.	Enter the correct PIN.
"Authentication has failed." *0153-402	The card authentication device has been removed or is not connected properly.	Connect the card authentication device again. Connect the card authentication device to the USB2.0 Interface Type A on the back left side of the machine.
"Authentication has failed." *0154-402	Reading of an IC card has failed.	Set the IC card on the authentication device correctly and for a longer duration.
"Authentication has failed." *0156-401	An incorrect user name or password was entered.	Enter the correct user name and password.
"The card authentication device is not connected."	The card authentication device has been removed or is not connected properly.	Connect the card authentication device again. Connect the card authentication device to the USB2.0 Interface Type A on the back left side of the machine.
	A malfunction is temporarily occurring on the machine.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 15 "Turning On and Off the Power"

Messages that Appear When the LDAP Server Is Unavailable

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Connection with LDAP server has failed. Check the server status."	The network is busy.	Try again.
	The setting information is incorrect.	Check the setting information of [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Authentication/Charge] ► [Administrator Authentication/User Authentication/App Auth.] ► [Register/Change/Delete LDAP Server]. See "Registering the LDAP Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"Exceeded time limit for LDAP server search. Check the server status."	The network is busy.	Try again.
	The setting information is incorrect.	Check the setting information of [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Settings for Administrator] ► [Authentication/Charge] ► [Administrator Authentication/User Authentication/App Auth.] ► [Register/Change/Delete LDAP Server]. See "Registering the LDAP Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"LDAP server authentication has failed. Check the settings."	The user name or password is incorrect.	Select the user in the address book, press [Edit], and specify the correct user name and password in [User Management / Others] tab ► [User Management] ► [LDAP Authentication Info]. See "Registering a User in the Address Book and Specifying the Login Information", User Guide (Full Version).

Messages that Appear When There Is a Problem with the Certificate

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"The destination cannot be selected because the device certificate used for the S/MIME signature is not currently valid."	The device certificate used for the S/MIME signature is not currently valid.	Install a new device certificate used for the S/MIME signature. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
"Signature cannot be set because there is a problem with the Digital Signature's device certificate. Check the device certificate."		
"Signature cannot be set because the Digital Signature's device certificate is not currently valid."	The device certificate used for the digital signature in PDF or PDF/A is not currently valid.	Use a valid device certificate for the digital signature in PDF or PDF/A. See "Scanning an Original as a PDF with Security Setting Specified", User Guide (Full Version).
"The destination cannot be selected because there is a problem with the device certificate used for the S/MIME signature. Check the device certificate."	The device certificate used for the digital signature in PDF or PDF/A is missing or invalid.	

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"The destination cannot be selected because its encryption certificate is not currently valid."	The user certificate (destination certificate) has expired.	Install a new user certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
"The group destination cannot be selected because it contains a destination with a encryption certificate that is not currently valid."		
"Transmission cannot be performed because the encryption certificate is not currently valid."		

Messages that Appear When an Application Site Cannot Be Used

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"A server error has occurred."	An unexpected error has occurred on the server.	• See the server maintenance information in [Information]. • Check whether the Network/Interface ([DNS Configuration], [Control Panel: Proxy Settings]) are correctly configured. See "Installing an Application from Application Site", User Guide (Full Version).
"Cannot connect to server which installs applications. Check maintenance information on Information screen or network settings."	Cannot connect to the installation server.	
"Could not update the firmware."		
"Failed to download the application"		
"Failed to install the application because an error has occurred."		

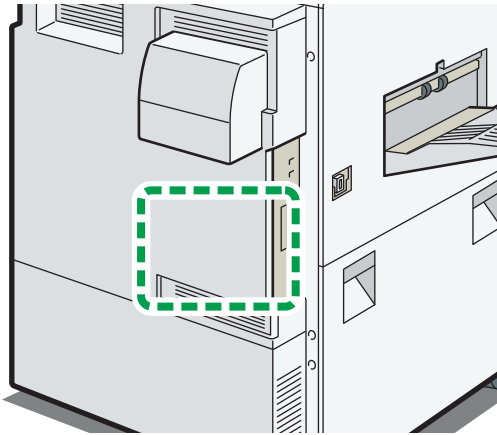
Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Could not restore the firmware because the required data does not exist."	The firmware from Application Site has not been updated.	The firmware cannot be recovered.
"JavaTM Platform has not been started. Install the application after JavaTM Platform has been started from Web Image Monitor."	JavaVM is not running.	To enable this setting, you must install an optional VM card in the machine.
"The specified page cannot be found."	An error has occurred in Application Site.	See the server maintenance information in [Information].
"There is insufficient space to store internally, delete any unnecessary applications."	The remaining free space on the hard disk is insufficient.	Delete applications that are not necessary.

11. Specifications for The Machine

Model-Specific Information

This section explains how you can identify the region your machine belongs to.

There is a label on the rear of the machine, located in the position shown below. The label contains details that identify the region your machine belongs to. Read the label.



D0CZIM1407

The following information is region-specific. Read the information under the symbol that corresponds to the region of your machine.

 **Region A** (mainly Europe and Asia)

If the label contains the following, your machine is a region A model:

- CODE XXXX -27, -29
- 220–240 V

 **Region B** (mainly North America)

If the label contains the following, your machine is a region B model:

- CODE XXXX -17
- IM 7000/8000: 120–127 V
- IM 9000: 208–240 V

Note

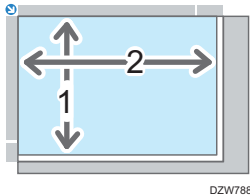
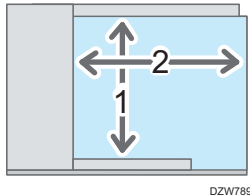
- Dimensions in this manual are given in two units of measure: metric and inch. If your machine is a Region A model, refer to the metric units. If your machine is a Region B model, refer to the inch units.

- If your machine is a region A model and "CODE XXXX -27" is printed on the label, see " Region **A** (mainly Europe)" also.
- If your machine is a region A model and "CODE XXXX -29" is printed on the label, see " Region **A** (mainly Asia)" also.

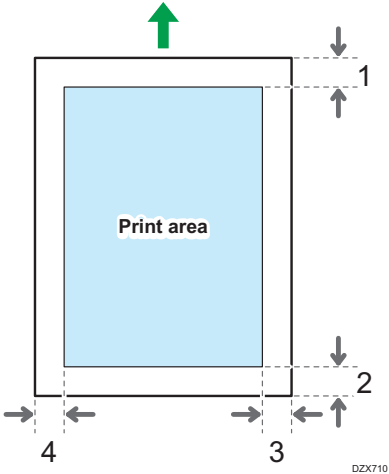
List of Specifications for Standard Functions

Specifications for the Main Unit

Item	Specifications
Configuration	Console
Memory	4 GB (2 GB on the main unit and 2 GB on the control panel)
Hard disk size	320 GB
Photosensitivity type	OPC drum
Copy process	Laser dry electrostatic transfer system
Exposure glass	Stationary original exposure type
Scan method	Front side: One-dimensional solid scanning system using CMOS Back side: One-dimensional solid scanning system using CIS
Warm-up time (23°C (73.4°F), rated voltage)	- IM 7000/8000 - Normal mode: 50 seconds - Quick mode: 20 seconds - IM 9000 - Normal mode: 60 seconds - Quick mode: 60 seconds
First copy time	- IM 7000/8000 3.2 seconds or less - IM 9000 2.9 seconds or less * 1 The first copy/print time may differ depending on the conditions and environment of the machine.
Copy/print speed (per minute)	- IM 7000: 70 sheets/minute - IM 8000: 80 sheets/minute - IM 9000: 90 sheets/minute (A4□, 8 1/2 × 11□, Paper Weight 2)

Item	Specifications
Maximum original size	 Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) A3  Region B (mainly North America) 11×17
Original scanning area	- Exposure Glass  DZW788 - Vertical: Up to 297 mm (11.7 inches) - Horizontal: Up to 432 mm (17.1 inches) - ADF  DZW789 - Vertical: 128 to 297 mm (5.1 to 11.7 inches) - Horizontal - Copy function: 128 to 1,260 mm (5.1 to 49.7 inches) - Scanner function: 128 to 432 mm (5.1 to 17.1 inches) - Facsimile function: 128 to 1,200 mm (5.1 to 47.3 inches)
Originals	Sheet, book, three-dimensional object

Item	Specifications
Copy size	• Trays 1–3 and the bypass tray: page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types" • Duplex: A3, A4, A5, B4, B5, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/4 × 14, 8 1/4 × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10 1/2, 8 × 10, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, 182 × 210 mm, 170 × 210 mm, 210 × 340 mm, 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13 1/2 • Duplex (Custom Size): Vertical: 140.0–297.0 mm (5.51–11.69 inches) Horizontal: 140.0–432.0 mm (5.51–17.0 inches)
Paper weight	• Trays 1–3 and the bypass tray: page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types" • Duplex: 64.0–256.0 g/m² (17.1 lb. Bond–141.0 lb. Index) For details about and recommendations concerning thick paper, see page 200 "Thick Paper Orientation and Recommended Status".

Item	Specifications
Missing image area (Copy)	 DZX710 1. Leading edge: 4.5±2.0 mm (0.18 ±0.08 inches) 2. Trailing edge: 3.0±2.0 mm (0.12 ±0.08 inches) 3. Left edge: 2.0±1.5 mm (0.08 ±0.06 inches) 4. Right edge: 2.0±1.5 mm (0.08 ±0.06 inches)
Preset reproduction ratio	 Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) Preset reproduction ratios (%): • Enlargement: 400, 200, 141, 122, 115 • Full size: 100 • Reduction: 93, 82, 75, 71, 65, 50, 25  Region B (mainly North America) Preset reproduction ratios (%): • Enlargement: 400, 200, 155, 129, 121 • Full size: 100 • Reduction: 93, 85, 78, 73, 65, 50, 25
Reproduction ratio (zoom)	From 25–400% in increments of 1%
Resolution (scanning originals)	600 dpi: 8 bit
Resolution (copying)	1200 dpi: 1 bit

Item	Specifications
Tone	256 tones
Paper capacity (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Continuous copy run	1–999 sheets
Duplex	Standard
Power requirements	 Region A (mainly Europe) • IM 7000/8000: 220–240 V, 8.5 A or more, 50/60 Hz • IM 9000: 220–240 V, 9 A or more, 50/60 Hz  Region A (mainly Asia) 220–240 V, 8.5 A, 50/60 Hz  Region B (mainly North America) • IM 7000/8000: 120–127 V, 15 A, 60 Hz • IM 9000: 208–240 V, 9 A, 60 Hz
Power consumption (Main unit only)  Region A (mainly Europe and Asia)	• IM 7000 Ready: 254 W During printing: 1,140 W Maximum: 1,730 W or less • IM 8000 Ready: 254 W During printing: 1,160 W Maximum: 1,730 W or less • IM 9000 Ready: 254 W During printing: 1,200 W Maximum: 2,020 W or less The power level when the main switch is turned off and the power cord is plugged into an outlet: 1 W or less

Item	Specifications
Power consumption (Complete system)  Region A (mainly Europe and Asia)	- IM 7000/8000 Maximum: 1,900 W or less - IM 9000 Maximum: 2,100 W or less The complete system consists of the main unit, LCT, interposer, and Finisher SR4140.
Power consumption (Main unit only)  Region B (mainly North America)	- IM 7000 Ready: 239 W During printing: 1,060 W Maximum: 1,760 W or less - IM 8000 Ready: 239 W During printing: 1,100 W Maximum: 1,760 W or less - IM 9000 Ready: 254 W During printing: 1,200 W Maximum: 2,020 W or less The power level when the main switch is turned off and the power cord is plugged into an outlet: 1 W or less
Power consumption (Complete system)  Region B (mainly North America)	- IM 7000/8000 Maximum: 1,800 W or less - IM 9000 Maximum: 2,100 W or less The complete system consists of the main unit, LCT, interposer, and Finisher SR4140.
Dimensions	690 × 883 × 1,161 mm (27.2 × 34.8 × 45.7 inches)
Space for main unit (W × D)	1,290 × 883 mm (50.8 × 34.8 inches) (including the bypass tray and copy tray)

Item	Specifications
Noise emission (Sound power level: Main unit only)	• IM 7000 Stand-by: 33.7 dB Copying: 69.9 dB • IM 8000 Stand-by: 33.7 dB Copying: 69.7 dB • IM 9000 Stand-by: 51.8 dB Copying: 71.8 dB
Noise emission (Sound power level: Complete system)	• IM 7000 Copying: 74.3 dB • IM 8000 Copying: 74.4 dB • IM 9000 Copying: 75.7 dB
Noise emission (Sound pressure level: Main unit only)	• IM 7000 Stand-by: 20.3 dB Copying: 56.8 dB • IM 8000 Stand-by: 21.5 dB Copying: 56.5 dB • IM 9000 Stand-by: 40.1 dB Copying: 59.1 dB
Noise emission (Sound pressure level: Complete system)	• IM 7000 Copying: 59.5 dB • IM 8000 Copying: 59.8 dB • IM 9000 Copying: 60.3 dB

Item	Specifications
Noise emission	 Note • Sound power levels and sound pressure levels are actual values measured in accordance with ISO 7779. • Sound pressure levels are measured from the position of the bystander. • The complete system consists of the main unit (including ADF), LCT, Multi-Folding Unit FD4010, interposer, Booklet Finisher SR4160, punch unit, and output jogger.
Weight	Approx. 200 kg (440.9 lb.) or less

Specifications for the Document Server

Item	Specifications
HDD (Document Server)	Approx. 94 GB Maximum: 10,000 pages (Total number of pages that can be stored with all functions combined.) Copy/A4 original: Approx. 10,000 pages Printer/A4/600 dpi, 2 bits: Approx. 10,000 pages Scanner/A4/200 dpi, 8 bits/JPEG: Approx. 10,000 pages (Under the printer and scanner modes, the number of the pages that can be stored depends on the print image and original.)
Maximum number of stored documents	3,000 documents
Number of pages supported by memory sorting	Maximum: 3,000 pages Copy/A4 original: Approx. 3,000 pages Printer/A4/600 dpi, 4 bits: Approx. 3,000 pages (Under the printer mode, the number of pages that can be sorted depends on the print image.)

 Note

- After the documents have been stored up to the maximum, no more document can be stored. Delete unneeded documents.

Specifications for Facsimile

This function may not be used depending on the telephone line or area status.

Note

- To connect the machine to the network, use a LAN cable supporting 1000BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, and 10BASE-T. The length of the usable cable is up to 100 m.

Fax Transmissions and Reception

Item	Specifications
Standard	G3
Resolution	- Standard: 8 × 3.85 lines/mm, 200 × 100 dpi (Standard character), 8 × 7.7 lines/mm, 200 × 200 dpi (Detail character) - Optional: 8 × 15.4 lines/mm, 16 × 15.4 lines/mm, 400 × 400 dpi (Super Fine character)^{*1}
Transmission time	3 seconds at 28,800 bps, Standard resolution (JBIG transmission: 2 seconds)
Data compression method	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG ^{*2}
Maximum original size	Standard: A3 or 11 × 17 Custom (w × h): 297 × 1,200 mm (11.7 × 47.3 inches)
Maximum scanning size	297 × 1,200 mm (11.7 × 47.3 inches)
Print process	Laser beam scanning and electro-photographic printing
Transmission speed	33,600 / 31,200 / 28,800 / 26,400 / 24,000 / 21,600 / 19,200 / 16,800 / 14,400 / 12,000 / 9,600 / 7,200 / 4,800 / 2,400 bps (auto shift down system)

*1 For Super Fine transmission, an expansion memory (optional) is required.

*2 JBIG transmission cannot be performed if the JBIG reception and ECM functions are not available on the destination fax. The ECM function is valid for communication over the G3 line.

Internet Fax Transmissions and Reception

Item	Specifications
Network	- Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) - Option: IEEE802.11 a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface
Transmit function	E-mail
Scan line density	- Standard: 200 × 100 dpi (Standard character), 200 × 200 dpi (Detail character) - Optional: 200 × 400 dpi, 400 × 400 dpi (Super Fine character)^{*1*2}
Original size: Scanning width	297 mm (A3 $\square$) ^{*1} , 257 mm (B4 JIS $\square$) ^{*1} , 210 mm (A4 $\square$)
Communication Protocols	- Transmission: SMTP, TCP/IP - Reception: POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP
E-mail format	Single/Multi-part, MIME Conversion Attached file forms: TIFF-F (MH, MR ^{*1} , MMR ^{*1} compression)
Internet communication	Send and receive e-mail with a computer that has an e-mail address
Encryption method (for forwarding)	S/MIME
Internet Fax send functions:	Automatic conversion of sent documents to e-mail format and e-mail transmission. Memory transmission only.
Internet Fax receive functions	Automatic detection and printing of appended TIFF-F (MH) files and ASCII text. Memory reception only.

*1 Full mode

*2 For superfine-character transmission, an expansion memory (optional) is required.

IP-Fax Transmissions and Reception

Item	Specifications
Network	- Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) - Option: IEEE802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface
Scan line density	- Standard: 8 × 3.85 lines/mm, 200 × 100 dpi (Standard character), 8 × 7.7 lines/mm, 200 × 200 dpi (Detail character) - Optional: 8 × 15.4 lines/mm, 16 × 15.4 lines/mm, 400 × 400 dpi (Super Fine character)^{*1}
Maximum original size	Standard: A3 or 11 × 17 Custom (w × h): 297 × 1,200 mm (11.7 × 47.3 inches)
Maximum scanning size	297 × 1,200 mm (11.7 × 47.3 inches)
Transmission protocol	Recommendation: T.38, TCP, UDP/IP communication, SIP (RFC 3261 compliant), H.323 v2
Compatible machines	IP-Fax compatible machines
IP-Fax transmission function	Specify an IP address and send faxes to an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of sending faxes to a G3 fax connected to a telephone line via a VoIP gateway.
IP-Fax reception function	Receive faxes sent from an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of receiving faxes from a G3 fax connected to a telephone line via a VoIP gateway.

*1 For detail-character and superfine-character transmission, an expansion memory (optional) is required.

Validated Peripherals

Item	Specifications
Gateway (T.38 compliant)	- InnovaPhone VoIP-Gateway IP305 Software version: v7 hotfix (09-70300.17) - Cisco VoIP-Gateway (Operation confirmed with H.323) Software version: IOS 12.3 (5) Platform: Cisco2600XM, 3725, 847-4V, 26xx, 36xx, 37xx, 7200, AS5300, ICS 7750 - Siemens VoIP-Gateway RG8300 (Operation confirmed with SIP) Software version: Version 5
Gatekeeper	- InnovaPhone VoIP-Gateway IP305 Software version: v7 hotfix (09-70300.17) - Cisco Gatekeeper Software version: IOS 12.1 (2) T Platform: Cisco2600XM, 3620, 3640, 3660, 3725, 3745, 7200, 7400
SIP server	- Cisco SIP proxy server Software version: Version 2.0 - Cisco VoIP-Gateway Software version: IOS 12.3 (17) a Platform: Cisco3725 (256Mbyte RAM), Cisco2621XM (128Mbyte RAM) - Cisco unified CallManager Software version: Ver6.2 - InnovaPhone VoIP-Gateway IP305 Software version: v7 hotfix (09-70300.17) - Siemens HiPath8000 (Operation confirmed with SIP) Software version: Voice redundant v4

Note

- You can assign multiple addresses of the machine in the IPv6 environment, but only one address can receive IP-fax.
- The SIP connection is specified to connect to either IPv4 or IPv6 depending on the environment of the machine. To change the setting, contact your local dealer.

E-mail Transmission and Folder Transmission (Fax (Classic) only)

Item	Specifications
Network	- Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) - Option: IEEE802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface
Scan line density	- Standard: 200 × 100 dpi (Standard character)^{*1}, 200 × 200 dpi (Detail character) - Optional: 200 × 400 dpi, 400 × 400 dpi (Super Fine character)^{*2}
Maximum original size	Standard: A3 or 11 × 17 Custom (w × h): 297 × 1,200 mm (11.7 × 47.3 inches)
Maximum scanning size (w × h)	297 × 1,200 mm (11.7 × 47.3 inches)
E-mail transmission protocols	SMTP, TCP/IP
Protocols for sending files to folders	SMB, FTP, TCP/IP
E-mail format	Single/Multi-part, MIME Conversion
File formats	TIFF (MH, MR, MMR compression), PDF, PDF/A When you select PDF or PDF/A for the file format, you can attach a digital signature.
Authentication methods	SMTP-AUTH, POP before SMTP, A-POP
Encryption method	S/MIME
E-mail sending functions	Automatically converts documents to e-mail format and sends them as e-mail.
Sending to folder functions	Sends scanned files over the network to shared folders or FTP server folders.

*1 When you send documents in TIFF format.

*2 For detail-character and superfine-character transmission, an expansion memory (optional) is required.

E-mail Reception

Item	Specifications
Network	• Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) • Option: IEEE802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface
E-mail reception protocols (Mail to Print)	POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP
E-mail format	Single/Multi-part, MIME Conversion
File formats (Mail to Print)	JPEG (JFIF), PDF
Authentication methods	SMTP-AUTH, POP before SMTP, A-POP
Encryption method	S/MIME
E-mail receiving functions	Automatically detects and outputs JPEG and PDF documents attached to received e-mail.

Specifications for Printer

Note

- To connect the machine to the network, use a LAN cable supporting 1000BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, and 10BASE-T. The length of the usable cable is up to 100 m.

Item	Specifications
Printing speed	• IM 7000: 70 pages/minute • IM 8000: 80 pages/minute • IM 9000: 90 pages/minute (A4, 8 1/2 × 11, plain paper, one-side printing)
Resolution	200 dpi, 300 dpi, 400 dpi, 600 dpi, 1,200 dpi

Item	Specifications
Printer language	- Standard: PCL 5e/6, PostScript 3 Emulation, PDF Emulation, MediaPrint (JPEG, TIFF) - Option: Genuine Adobe PostScript 3, Genuine Adobe PDF, IPDS, XPS
Interface	- Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) USB2.0 (Type B) port USB2.0 (Type A) port (on the control panel) SD card slot (on the control panel) - Option: IEEE 1284 parallel interface IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface File format converter Device Server option
Network protocol	TCP/IP (IPv4, IPv6)
USB interface	- Transmission spec: USB 2.0 Standard - Connectable device: Devices corresponding to USB 2.0 Standard
Operating system	- Windows 7/8.1/10 - Windows Server 2008/2008 R2/2012/2012 R2/2016/2019 - macOS 10.12 or later
Fonts	- PCL 5e/6: 80 fonts, 13 International fonts - PostScript 3 Emulation: 80 fonts, 13 International fonts - PDF Emulation: 80 fonts, 13 International fonts - Genuine Adobe PDF: 136 fonts - Genuine Adobe PostScript 3: 136 fonts - IPDS: 108 fonts

Item	Specifications
Store function	Total number of documents that can be stored: Up to 3,000 documents Number of pages for each document that can be stored: Up to 3,000 pages Total number of pages of all documents that can be stored: Up to 10,000 pages

Note

- The maximum length for the cable connecting the machine to an Ethernet network is 100 meters.
- When the resolution is 1200 dpi, print speed may be slower.

Specifications for Scanner

Note

- To connect the machine to the network, use a LAN cable supporting 1000BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, and 10BASE-T. The length of the usable cable is up to 100 m.

Scanning

Item	Specifications
Type	Full-color scanner
Scan method	Flatbed scanning
Image sensor type	Front side: CMOS Image Sensor Back side: Color CIS
Scan type	Sheet, book, three-dimensional object
Original sizes that can be scanned	• Length: 10–297 mm (0.4–11 inches) • Width: 10–432 mm (0.4–17 inches)
Scan sizes automatically detectable from the exposure glass	 Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS  Region B (mainly North America) 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 11, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2

Item	Specifications
Scan sizes automatically detectable from the ADF	 Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 11  Region B (mainly North America) A3, A4, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 11, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, 10 × 14
Scan speed (the machine equipped with the one-pass duplex scanning ADF):	- When scanning one-sided originals (black and white, full color) 120 pages/minute - When scanning two-sided originals (black and white, full color) 240 pages/minute When using the E-mail, Scan to Folder, WSD (Push Type), or Scan to Removable device (Original size: A4/8 1/2 × 11, Resolution: 300 dpi) - Black and white Original Type: B & W two-value, Compression (MMR): Compressed, ITU-T No1 Chart - Full Color Original type: Text/Photo, Compression (Gray Scale/Full Color): Default, Original Chart Scanning speed differs depending on the operating environment of the machine and computer, scan settings, and the content of originals.
Tone	- Black & White: 2 tones - Full Color/Gray Scale: 256 tones
Basic scanning resolution:	200 dpi
Image compression type for black and white (two-value)	TIFF (MH, MR, MMR, JBIG2)
Image compression type for gray scale/full color	JPEG

Item	Specifications
Interface	- Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) USB 2.0 (Type A) port (on the control panel) SD card slot (on the control panel) - Option: IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface
Network protocol	TCP/IP
WSD	Supported
DSM	Supported ^{*1}

^{*1} The function can be used only in Scanner (Classic).

E-mail transmission

Item	Specifications
Scanning resolution	100 dpi, 200 dpi, 300 dpi, 400 dpi, 600 dpi
Protocol ^{*1}	SMTP ^{*2} , POP ^{*3} , IMAP4 ^{*3}
Output format	TIFF, JPEG, PDF, High Compression PDF, PDF/A, Searchable PDF ^{*4*5}

^{*1} Supporting Web mail transmission

^{*2} Supporting SMTP over SSL

^{*3} Supporting POP/IMAP4 over SSL.

^{*4} To perform OCR, the optional OCR unit is required.

^{*5} The number of characters that can be scanned optically is about 40,000 characters per page.

Note

- When you select [PDF], [High Compression PDF], or [PDF/A] for the file format, you can attach a digital signature. You can also specify the security settings for [PDF] or [High Compression PDF].
- See "Scanning an Original as a PDF with Security Setting Specified", User Guide (Full Version).
- To specify High Compression PDF for the PDF type, the following settings are required:
 - Selecting Gray Scale or Full Color for [Original Type] under [Send Settings]
 - Selecting other than [Reduce / Enlarge] under [Send Settings]
 - Selecting [200 dpi], [300 dpi], [400 dpi], or [600 dpi] for [Resolution] under [Send Settings]

- Selecting other than [Preview]
- Specifying [PDF File Type: PDF/A Fixed] under [System Settings] to [Off]

Scan to Folder

Item	Specifications
Scanning resolution	100 dpi, 200 dpi, 300 dpi, 400 dpi, 600 dpi
Protocol	SMB, FTP
Output format	TIFF, JPEG, PDF, High Compression PDF, PDF/A, Searchable PDF ^{*1*2}

*1 To perform OCR, the optional OCR unit is required.

*2 The number of characters that can be scanned optically is about 40,000 characters per page.

Note

- When you select [PDF], [High Compression PDF], or [PDF/A] for the file format, you can attach a digital signature. You can also specify the security settings for [PDF] or [High Compression PDF].
- See "Scanning an Original as a PDF with Security Setting Specified", User Guide (Full Version).
- To specify High Compression PDF for the PDF type, the following settings are required:
 - Selecting Gray Scale or Full Color for [Original Type] under [Transmission Settings]
 - Selecting other than [Reduce / Enlarge] under [Transmission Settings]
 - Selecting [200 dpi], [300 dpi], [400 dpi], or [600 dpi] for [Resolution] under [Transmission Settings]
 - Selecting other than [Preview]
 - Specifying [PDF File Type: PDF/A Fixed] under [System Settings] to [Off]

Network TWAIN Scanner

Item	Specifications
Scanning resolution	100–1,200 dpi ^{*1}
Protocol	TCP/IP
Operating system	• Windows 7/8.1/10 • Windows Server 2008/2008 R2/2012/2012 R2/2016/2019 (TWAIN scanner runs in 32-bit compatible mode on a 64-bit operating system, so TWAIN scanner is not compatible with 64-bit applications. Use 32-bit applications. IC card Authentication System is not compatible with 64-bit operating system.)

*1 The maximum resolution depends on the scan size.

WIA scanner

Item	Specifications
Scanning resolution (Main scanning × Sub-scanning)	100–1,200 dpi* ¹
Protocol	TCP/IP
Operating system	- Windows 7/8.1/10 - Windows Server 2008/2008 R2/2012/2012 R2/2016/2019 (WIA scanner can function under both 32- and 64-bit operating systems.)

*1 The maximum resolution depends on the scan size.

Specifications for Auto Document Feeder

Item	Specifications
Mode	Batch mode, SADP mode, Mixed Sizes mode, Custom Size originals mode, Original Orientation mode
Original size	 Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) A3□–A5, B4 JIS□–B6 JIS, 11 × 17□–8¹/₂ × 11 You cannot scan two sides of B6 JIS originals.  Region B (mainly North America) 11 × 17□–5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, A3□–A4
Original weight	One-sided: 40–128 g/m² (11–34 lb. Bond) Two-sided: 52–128 g/m² (14–34 lb. Bond) Small size paper unit (optional): One-sided/Two-sided: 64–128 g/m² (17–34 lb. Bond)

Item	Specifications
Number of originals to be set	220 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond) • Small size paper unit (optional): 44 sheets (81.4g/m²)

Specifications for Finisher SR4140

Item	Specifications
Paper size for the finisher upper tray	• Without Z-fold: A3□, A4, A5, A6□, B4 JIS□, B5 JIS, B6 JIS□, 11 × 17□, 8¹/₂ × 14□, 8¹/₂ × 13□, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 14□, 8¹/₄ × 13□, 8 × 13□, 8 × 10¹/₂, 8 × 10, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 182 × 210 mm□, 170 × 210 mm□, 210 × 340 mm□, 8K□, 16K, 11 × 15□, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15□, 10 × 14□, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅□, 8¹/₂ × 13¹/₂□, custom size • With Z-fold: A3□, A4□, B4 JIS□, 11 × 17□, 8¹/₂ × 14□, 8¹/₂ × 11□, 8K□, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅□
Paper weight for the finisher upper tray	• Without Z-fold: 52.3–216.0 g/m² (14.0 lb. Bond–79.9 lb. Cover) • With Z-fold: 64.0–105.0 g/m² (17.1–28.0 lb. Bond)
Stack capacity for the finisher upper tray (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	• Without Z-fold: • 500 sheets: A4, 8¹/₂ × 11 or smaller • 250 sheets: B4 JIS, 8¹/₂ × 14 or larger • With Z-fold: 30 sheets

Item	Specifications
Paper size for the finisher shift tray	- Without Z-fold: A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11×17, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, $8\frac{1}{4} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{4} \times 13$, 8×13, $8 \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, 8×10, $7\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$, 182×210 mm, 170×210 mm, 210×340 mm, 8K, 16K, 11×15, 11×14, 10×15, 10×14, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{2}{5}$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{1}{2}$, custom size - With Z-fold: A3, A4, B4 JIS, 11×17, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, 8K, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{2}{5}$
Paper weight for the finisher shift tray	- Without Z-fold: 52.0–300.0 g/m² (14.0 lb. Bond–165.0 lb. Index) - With Z-fold: 64.0–105.0 g/m² (17.1–28.0 lb. Bond)
Paper sizes that can be shifted when delivered to the finisher shift tray	A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11×17 , $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, $8\frac{1}{4} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{4} \times 13$, 8×13 , $8 \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, 8×10 , $7\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$, 182×210 mm, 170×210 mm, 210×340 mm, 8K, 16K, 11×15 , 11×14 , 10×15 , 10×14 , $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{2}{5}$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{1}{2}$, custom size
Paper weight that can be shifted when delivered to the finisher shift tray	52.0–300.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–165.0 lb. Index)

Item	Specifications
Stack capacity for the finisher shift tray (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	- Without Z-fold: 3,000 sheets: A4, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 11 1,500 sheets: A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 11 1,000 sheets: 12 × 18, 13 × 19 500 sheets: A5, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2 100 sheets: A5, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2 When using paper that has a horizontal length of 487.8–1,260.0 mm (19.21–49.60 inches), remove output sheets one by one from the tray. - With Z-fold: 30 sheets
Staple paper size	- Without Z-fold: A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/4 × 14, 8 1/4 × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10 1/2, 8 × 10, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 182 × 210 mm, 170 × 210 mm, 210 × 340 mm, 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13 1/2 - With Z-fold: A3, B4 JIS, 11 × 17 - With Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: - A3/A4 - B4 JIS/B5 JIS 11 × 17/8 1/2 × 11
Staple paper weight	64.0–80.0 g/m² (17.1–21.3 lb. Bond) When not using Z-fold, you can use two sheets of paper weighing up to 200.0 g/m² (110.7 lb. Cover) per set as cover sheets.

Item	Specifications
Staple capacity (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	- Without Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: 50 sheets: A3, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/4 × 14, 8 1/4 × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10 1/2, 8 × 10, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 182 × 210 mm, 170 × 210 mm, 210 × 340 mm, 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13 1/2 100 sheets: A4, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 11 - With Mixed Sizes: 50 sheets (A3/A4, B4 JIS/B5 JIS, 11 × 17/8 1/2 × 11) - With Z-fold: 10 sheets - Combination of Z-folded sheets and unfolded sheets: 10 Z-folded sheets, 9 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 10 unfolded sheets, 8 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 20 unfolded sheets, 7 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 30 unfolded sheets, 6 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 40 unfolded sheets, 5 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 50 unfolded sheets, 4 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 60 unfolded sheets, 3 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 70 unfolded sheets, 2 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 80 unfolded sheets, 1 Z-folded sheet and 1 to 90 unfolded sheets
Stack capacity after stapling (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	- Without Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: 2–9 sheets: 150 sets (A4, B5, 8 1/2 × 11, A3, B4, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14) 10–50 sheets: 150–30 sets (A3, B4, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14) 10–100 sheets: 200–30 sets (A4, B5, 8 1/2 × 11) - With Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: 1–10 sheets: 30–3 sets (A3 Z-folded paper with A4, B4 JIS Z-folded paper with B5 JIS, 11 × 17 Z-folded paper with 8 1/2 × 11) - With Mixed Sizes: 2–50 sheets: 30 sets (A3/A4, B4 JIS/B5 JIS, 11 × 17/8 1/2 × 11)
Staple position	5 positions (Top 1, Bottom 1, Slant, Left 2, Top 2)

Item	Specifications
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.
Maximum power consumption	100 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	806 × 730 × 980 mm (31.8 × 28.8 × 38.6 inches)
Weight	Approx. 75 kg (165.4 lb.)

Specifications for Finisher SR4150

Item	Specifications
Paper size for the finisher upper tray	A3, B4 JIS, A4, B5 JIS, A5, B6 JIS, A6, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/4 × 14, 8 1/4 × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10 1/2, 8 × 10, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 182 × 210 mm, 170 × 210 mm, 210 × 340 mm, 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13 1/2, custom size
Paper weight for the finisher upper tray	52.0–216.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–79.9 lb. Cover)
Stack capacity for the finisher upper tray (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	250 sheets: A4, 8 1/2 × 11 or smaller 50 sheets: B4 JIS, 8 1/2 × 14 or larger When using paper that has a horizontal length of 487.8–600.0 mm (19.21–23.63 inches), remove output sheets one by one from the tray.
Paper size for the finisher shift tray	A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/4 × 14, 8 1/4 × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10 1/2, 8 × 10, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, 182 × 210 mm, 170 × 210 mm, 210 × 340 mm, 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13 1/2, custom size
Paper weight for the finisher shift tray	52.0–300.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–165.0 lb. Index)

Item	Specifications
Paper sizes that can be shifted when delivered to the finisher shift tray	A3□, A4, A5, B4□, B5, 11 × 17□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13□, 8 × 13□, 8 × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 8 × 10, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 182 × 210 mm□, 170 × 210 mm□, 210 × 340 mm□, 8K□, 16K, 11 × 15□, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15□, 10 × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ □, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂ □, custom size
Paper weight that can be shifted when delivered to the finisher shift tray	52.0–300.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–165.0 lb. Index)
Stack capacity for the finisher shift tray (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	3,000 sheets: A4□, 8¹/₂ × 11□ 1,500 sheets: A3□, A4□, B4 JIS□, B5 JIS, 11 × 17□, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 11□, 12 × 18□, 13 × 19¹/₅□, SRA3□ 500 sheets: A5□ 100 sheets: A5□, B6 JIS□, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂□ When using paper that has a horizontal length of 487.8–1,260.0 mm (19.21–49.60 inches), remove output sheets one by one from the tray.
Staple paper size	A3□, A4, B4 JIS□, B5 JIS, 11 × 17□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 □, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 □, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13□, 8 × 13□, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 8K□, 16K, 11 × 15□, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15□, 10 × 14 □, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ □, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂ □, custom size
Staple paper weight	52.0–105.0 g/m ² (14.0–28.0 lb. Bond) You can use two sheets of paper weighing up to 256 g/m ² (141 lb. Index) per set as cover sheets.
Staple capacity (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	65 sheets

Item	Specifications
Stack capacity after stapling (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	- Without Mixed Sizes: 2–19 sheets: 150 sets (A4□, 8 1/2 × 11□) 20–65 sheets: 150–46 sets (A4□, 8 1/2 × 11□) 2–14 sheets: 100 sets (A4□, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 11□) 15–65 sheets: 100–23 sets (A4□, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 11□) 2–14 sheets: 100 sets (other size paper) 15–65 sheets: 100–23 sets (other size paper) - With Mixed Sizes: 2–65 sheets: 23 sets (A3□/A4□, B4 JIS□/B5 JIS□, 11 × 17□/8 1/2 × 11□)
Staple position	Top 1, Bottom 1, Slant, Bottom Slant, Left 2, Top 2
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.
Maximum power consumption	67 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	657 × 730 × 980 mm (25.9 × 28.8 × 38.6 inches) (Except protruding parts)
Weight	- Approx. 38 kg (83.8 lb.) (Without punch unit) - Approx. 41 kg (90.4 lb.) (With punch unit)

Specifications for Booklet Finisher SR4160

Item	Specifications
Paper size for the finisher upper tray	A3□, B4 JIS□, A4, B5 JIS, A5, B6 JIS□, A6□, 11 × 17□, 8 1/2 × 14□, 8 1/2 × 13□, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/4 × 14□, 8 1/4 × 13□, 8 × 13□, 8 × 10 1/2, 8 × 10, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 182 × 210 mm□, 170 × 210 mm□, 210 × 340 mm□, 8K□, 16K, 11 × 15□, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15□, 10 × 14□, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5□, 8 1/2 × 13 1/2□, custom size
Paper weight for the finisher upper tray	52.0–216.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–79.9 lb. Cover)

Item	Specifications
Stack capacity for the finisher upper tray (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	250 sheets: A4, 8¹/₂ × 11 or smaller 50 sheets: B4 JIS, 8¹/₂ × 14 or larger When using paper that has a horizontal length of 487.8–600.0 mm (19.21–23.63 inches), remove output sheets one by one from the tray.
Paper size for the finisher shift tray	A3, A4, A5, B4, B5, B6, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 8 × 10, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 182 × 210 mm, 170 × 210 mm, 210 × 340 mm, 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂ , custom size
Paper weight for the finisher shift tray	52.0–300.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–165.0 lb. Index)
Paper sizes that can be shifted when delivered to the finisher shift tray	A3, A4, A5, B4, B5, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 8 × 10, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 182 × 210 mm, 170 × 210 mm, 210 × 340 mm, 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂ , custom size
Paper weight that can be shifted when delivered to the finisher shift tray	52.0–300.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–165.0 lb. Index)
Stack capacity for the finisher shift tray (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	2,000 sheets: A4, 8¹/₂ × 11 1,000 sheets: A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 11, 12 × 18, SRA3, 13 × 19¹/₅ 500 sheets: A5 100 sheets: A5, B6 JIS, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂ When using paper that has a horizontal length of 487.8–1,260.0 mm (19.21–49.60 inches), remove output sheets one by one from the tray.
Staple paper size	A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂ , custom size

Item	Specifications
Staple paper weight	52.0–105.0 g/m ² (14.0–28.0 lb. Bond) You can use two sheets of paper weighing up to 256 g/m ² (141 lb. Index) per set as cover sheets.
Staple capacity (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	65 sheets
Stack capacity after stapling (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	- Without Mixed Sizes: 2–12 sheets: 150 sets (A4□, 8¹/₂ × 11□) 13–65 sheets: 150–30 sets (A4□, 8¹/₂ × 11□) 2–9 sheets: 100 sets (A4□, B5 JIS, 8¹/₂ × 11□) 10–65 sheets: 100–15 sets (A4□, B5 JIS, 8¹/₂ × 11□) 2–9 sheets: 100 sets (other size paper) 10–65 sheets: 100–15 sets (other size paper) - With Mixed Sizes: 2–65 sheets: 23 sets (A3□/A4□, B4 JIS□/B5 JIS□, 11 × 17□/8¹/₂ × 11□)
Staple position	Top 1, Bottom 1, Slant, Bottom Slant, Left 2, Top 2
Saddle stitch paper size	A3□, A4□, B4 JIS□, B5 JIS□, 11 × 17□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11□, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13□, 11 × 15□, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15□, 10 × 14□
Saddle stitch paper weight	- Plain Paper: 64.0–105.0 g/m² (17.1–28.0 lb. Bond) - Coated Paper: 82.0–105.0 g/m² (22.0–28.0 lb. Bond) You can use a sheet of paper weighing up to 216.0 g/m ² (79.9 lb. Cover) per set as a cover sheet.
Saddle stitch capacity (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	- Paper between 64.0 g/m² (17.1 lb. Bond) and 81.0 g/m² (21.6 lb. Bond): 1 set (20 sheets) - Paper between 82.0 g/m² (22.0 lb. Bond) and 105.0 g/m² (28.0 lb. Bond): 1 set (10 sheets)
Stack capacity after saddle stitching (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	2–5 sheets: 30 sets 6–10 sheets: 15 sets 11–15 sheets: 10 sets 16–20 sheets: 6 sets

Item	Specifications
Saddle stitch position	Center 2 positions
Types of folds	Half Fold
Half fold paper size	A3□, A4□, B4 JIS□, B5 JIS□, 11 × 17□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11□, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13□, 11 × 15□, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15□, 10 × 14□
Half fold Paper weight	1 sheet: 64.0–216.0 g/m² (17.1 lb. Bond–79.9 lb. Cover) 2–5 sheets: 64.0–105.0 g/m² (17.1–28.0 lb. Bond)
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.
Maximum power consumption	67 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	657 × 730 × 980 mm (25.9 × 28.8 × 38.6 inches) (Except protruding parts)
Weight	- Approx. 58 kg (127.9 lb.) (Without punch unit) - Approx. 61 kg (134.5 lb.) (With punch unit)

Specifications for Copy Tray

Item	Specifications
Paper size	A3□, B4 JIS□, A4, B5 JIS, A5, B6 JIS□, A6□, 11 × 17□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13□, 8 × 13□, 8 × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 8 × 10, 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 182 × 210 mm□, 170 × 210 mm□, 210 × 340 mm□, 8K□, 16K, 11 × 15□, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15□, 10 × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ □, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂ □, custom size
Paper weight	52.3–360.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–198.0 lb. Index)
Paper capacity (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	500 sheets: A4, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 250 sheets: B5 or smaller, B4, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 or larger
Dimensions (W × D × H)	400 × 350 × 381 mm (15.7 × 14.0 × 15.0 inches)

Item	Specifications
Weight	Approx. 3 kg (6.6 lb.)

Specifications for Shift Tray (Shift Sort Tray SH4020)

Item	Specifications
Paper size	A3□, A4, A5, A6□, B4□, B5, B6□, 11 × 17□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13□, 8 × 13□, 8 × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 8 × 10, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 182 × 210 mm□, 170 × 210 mm□, 210 × 340 mm□, 8K□, 16K, 11 × 15□, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15□, 10 × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ □, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂ □, custom size
Paper capacity (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	1,250 sheets: A4, B5, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 500 sheets: A3□, B4□, A5□, 11 × 17□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, 12 × 18□ 100 sheets: A5□, B6□, A6□, 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂
Paper weight	52.3–216.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–79.9 lb. Cover)
Paper sizes that can be shifted	A3□, A4, A5, B4□, B5, 11 × 17□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13□, 8 × 13□, 8 × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 8 × 10, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 182 × 210 mm□, 170 × 210 mm□, 210 × 340 mm□, 8K□, 16K, 11 × 15□, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15□, 10 × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ □, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂ □
Paper weight that can be shifted	52.3–216.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond–79.9 lb. Cover)
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.
Maximum power consumption	20 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	400×600×480 mm (15.7 × 23.6 × 18.9 inches)
Weight Approx.	11 kg (24.0 lb.)

Specifications for Punch Unit (Finisher SR4140)

Punch unit type	Paper size	Paper weight
2 & 4 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A3, A4, A5, A6, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ , custom size	52.3–300.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond– 165.0 lb. Index)
2 & 4 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A4, A5, B5 JIS, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 16K, custom size	
2 & 4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A3, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, custom size	
2 & 4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A4, B5 JIS, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 16K, custom size	
4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ , custom size	52.3–300.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond– 165.0 lb. Index)
4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A4, A5, B5 JIS, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 16K, custom size	
2 & 3 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A3, A4, A5, A6, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ , custom size	52.3–300.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond– 165.0 lb. Index)
2 & 3 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A4, A5, B5 JIS, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 16K, custom size	
2 & 3 holes type: 3 holes	☐: A3, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, custom size	
2 & 3 holes type: 3 holes	☐: A4, B5 JIS, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 16K, custom size	

Specifications for Punch Unit (Finisher SR4150, Booklet Finisher SR4160)

Punch unit type	Paper size	Paper weight
2 & 4 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11×17 , $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, $8\frac{1}{4} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{4} \times 13$, 8×13 , $7\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$, 8K, 16K, 11×15 , 11×14 , 10×15 , 10×14 , SRA4, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{2}{5}$, custom size	52.3–256.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond– 141.0 lb. Index)
2 & 4 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A4, A5, B5 JIS, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, $7\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$, 16K, custom size	
2 & 4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A3, B4 JIS, 11×17 , 11×15 , 11×14 , 8K, custom size	
2 & 4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A4, B5 JIS, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, $7\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, 16K, custom size	
4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11×17 , $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, $8\frac{1}{4} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{4} \times 13$, 8×13 , $7\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$, 8K, 16K, 11×15 , 11×14 , 10×15 , 10×14 , SRA4, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{2}{5}$, custom size	52.3–256.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond– 141.0 lb. Index)
4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A4, A5, B5 JIS, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, $7\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$, 16K, custom size	
2 & 3 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A3, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11×17 , $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, $8\frac{1}{4} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{4} \times 13$, 8×13 , $7\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$, 8K, 16K, 11×15 , 11×14 , 10×15 , 10×14 , SRA4, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{2}{5}$, custom size	52.3–256.0 g/m ² (14.0 lb. Bond– 141.0 lb. Index)
2 & 3 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A4, B5 JIS, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, $7\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$, 16K, custom size	
2 & 3 holes type: 3 holes	☐: A3, B4 JIS, 11×17 , 11×15 , 11×14 , 10×15 , 10×14 , 8K, custom size	
2 & 3 holes type: 3 holes	☐: A4, B5 JIS, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, $7\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{2}$, 16K, custom size	

Specifications for Interposer

Item	Specifications
Paper size	page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper capacity	page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper weight	page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.
Maximum power consumption	43 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	500 × 600 × 600 mm (19.7 × 23.7 × 23.7 inches)
Weight	Approx. 12 kg (26.5 lb.)

Specifications for Mailbox

Item	Specifications
Number of trays	9 trays
Paper size	A3□, B4 JIS□, A4, B5 JIS, A5, 11 × 17□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13□, 8 × 13□, 8 × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 8 × 10, 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 182 × 210 mm□, 170 × 210 mm□, 210 × 340 mm□, 8K□, 16K, 11 × 15□, 11 × 14□, 10 × 15□, 10 × 14□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ □, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ¹ / ₂ □
Paper weight	60.0–128.0 g/m ² (16.1 lb. Bond–47.3 lb. Cover)
Paper capacity (80 g/m ² , 20 lb. Bond)	100 sheets per tray
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.
Maximum power consumption	30 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	540 × 600 × 660 mm (21.3 × 23.7 × 26.0 inches)
Weight	Approx. 15 kg (33.1 lb.)

Specifications for Multi-Folding Unit FD4010

Item	Specifications
Paper size	- With Z-fold: A3, A4, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 11, 8K, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5 - With Half Fold: A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 11, 8K, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5 - With Letter Fold-in A3, A4, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5 - With Letter Fold-out A3, A4, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5 - With Multi-sheet Fold: - Letter Fold-in, Letter Fold-out: A4, 8 1/2 × 11
Paper weight	- With Z-fold, Half Fold, Letter Fold-out, Letter Fold-in: 64.0–105.0 g/m² (17.1–28.0 lb. Bond) - With Multi-sheet Fold: 64.0–80.0 g/m² (17.1–21.3 lb. Bond)
Power requirements	 Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 220–240 V, 50/60 Hz  Region B (mainly North America) 100–120 V, 50/60 Hz (A separate power source is required.)
Maximum power consumption	60 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	209 × 730 × 980 mm (8.2 × 28.8 × 38.6 inches) (Except protruding parts)
Weight	45 kg (99.2 lb.) or less

Specifications for Multi-Folding Unit FD4020

Item	Specifications
Paper size	- With Z-fold: A3, A4, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 11, 8K, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13 1/2 - With Half Fold, Letter Fold-out, Letter Fold-in, Double Parallel Fold, and Gate Fold: A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 11, 8K, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13 1/2 - With Multi-sheet Fold: - Half Fold, Letter Fold-in: A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 11, 8K, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13 1/2 - Letter Fold-out: A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13 1/2
Paper weight	- With Z-fold, Half Fold, Letter Fold-out, Letter Fold-in, Double Parallel Fold, and Gate Fold: 64.0–105.0 g/m² (17.1–28.0 lb. Bond) - With Multi-sheet Fold: 64.0–80.0 g/m² (17.1–21.3 lb. Bond)
Power requirements	 Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 220–240 V, 1.2 A, 50/60 Hz  Region B (mainly North America) 120 V, 2.0 A, 50/60 Hz (A separate power source is required.)
Maximum power consumption	240 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	470 × 730 × 980 mm (18.6 × 28.8 × 38.6 inches)
Weight	Approx. 92 kg (202.9 lb.)

Note

- The Multi-sheet Fold function can fold a maximum of three sheets at a time.
- Wrinkling can occur when applying letter fold-in, letter fold-out, or gate fold to B4 JIS, A3, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$, 11×17 , 8K, 12×18 , $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{2}{5}$, or larger sheets. In some cases, you may have to use A4 sheets or smaller when applying folds in combination with the reduction function.

Specifications for Output Jogger

Item	Specifications
Paper size	A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11×17 , $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$, $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$, 12×18 , $13 \times 19\frac{1}{5}$
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.
Maximum power consumption	15 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	169 × 539 × 203 mm (6.7 × 21.3 × 8.0 inches)
Weight	Approx. 2 kg (4.4 lb.)

Specifications for Large Capacity Tray (LCT)

Item	Specifications
Page size	page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper capacity	page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper weight	page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.
Maximum power consumption	50 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	352 × 540 × 625 mm (13.9 × 21.3 × 24.7 inches)
Weight	Approx. 22 kg (48.6 lb.)

Note

- If you want to load custom size paper, contact your service representative.

Specifications for IEEE 1284 Interface Board

Item	Specifications
Transmission spec	IEEE 1284
Required cable	Standard IEEE 1284 compliant Micro Centronics 36 pin cable

Specifications for Wireless LAN Board

Important

- Note that the available channels (frequency ranges) and locations to use the wireless LAN are subject to the regulations of the country or region where the printer is used. Be sure to use the wireless LAN according to the applicable regulations.

Item	Specifications
Transmission spec	Based on IEEE 802.11 a/b/g/n (wireless LAN)
Protocol	TCP/IP
Transmission rate	2.4 GHz band: 1–130 Mbps
Frequency range (Center Frequency)	2412–2472 MHz (1–13 channels)
Transmission mode	• Infrastructure mode • Direct Connection Mode • Direct Connection: Group Owner Mode

Note

- Web Image Monitor is supported.
- The transmission rates of 130 Mbps in the 2.4 GHz band is the theoretical values of the wireless LAN specification. The actual transmission rate may be lower, depending on the operating environment.
- Channels other than 1–11 cannot be used because of the specifications and the configuration of the access point.

- The channel in use might differ depending on the country.

Specifications for Device Server Option

Item	Specifications
Interface	• Gigabit Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T)
Operating systems	• Windows 7/8.1/10, Windows Server 2008/2008 R2/2012/2012 R2/2016/2019 • macOS 10.12 or later
Protocol	• Port 9100, IPP, LPR IPP does not support SPL. • The device server option allows simultaneous connection of up to eight sessions of printing protocols.

The Setting Values of the Transmission Function

Note

- Depending on the type or settings of a document or original, you may not be able to specify or enter the maximum number of destinations or characters.

Send Email

Item	Value	Remarks
Maximum number of characters entered in a subject	128 alphanumeric characters	-
Maximum number of characters entered in the an e-mail message	80 alphanumeric characters	You cannot select an item from the destination list in the address book and enter the value manually at the same time.
Maximum number of characters entered in an e-mail address	128 alphanumeric characters	An e-mail; address that has been searched from the LDAP server and exceeds 128 alphanumeric characters cannot be specified correctly as the destination.
Number of destinations that can be specified at one time	500	Up to 100 items can be specified when entering an item manually (including the items specified by LDAP search) For the rest, select up to 400 items from the registered destinations.
Size of a document that can be sent	Up to 768 MB per document	-
Number of pages that can be sent	Up to 1,000 pages per document	-

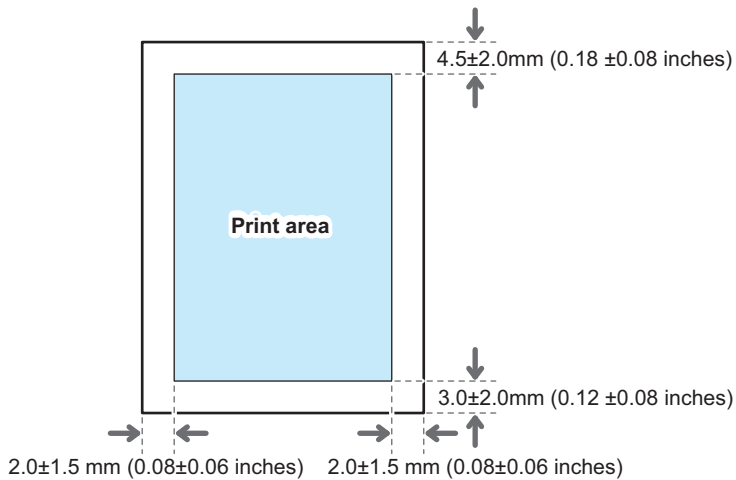
Send to Folder

Item	Value	Remarks
Maximum number of characters in a path name specified for the SMB protocol	256 characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a user name specified for the SMB protocol	64 characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a password specified for the SMB protocol	64 characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a server name specified for the FTP protocol	64 characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a path name specified for the FTP protocol	256 characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a user name specified for the FTP protocol	64 alphanumeric characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a password specified for the FTP protocol	64 alphanumeric characters	-
Number of destinations that can be specified at one time	50	Up to 50 items can be entered also when entering the items manually.
Size of a document that can be sent	2,000 MB per document	-

Broadcast Transmission

Item	Value	Remarks
Total number of destinations that can be specified for Send Email and Send to Folder	550	-
Number of destinations that can be specified when sending a document by Send Email	500	Up to 100 items can be specified when entering an item manually (including the items specified by LDAP search)
Number of destinations that can be specified when sending a document by Send to Folder	50	-

Printable Area and Margin



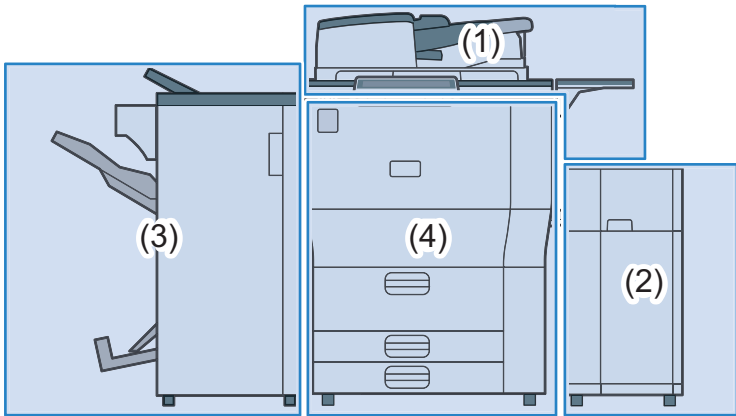
DZC463

Note

- The machine does not support edge-to-edge printing. To minimize the margins, specify the maximum printable area with the settings on the printer driver.
- See "Maximizing the Printable Area When Printing", User Guide (Full Version).
- The printable area may vary due to the paper size or settings of the printer driver.
- The outside of the printable area can be printed due to the settings of the printer driver or printing condition; however, the print result may be different from the intended one or the paper may not be fed correctly.

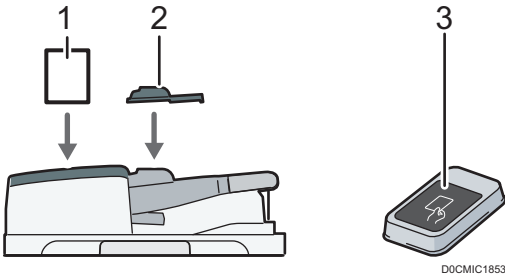
Machine Options

Guide to Functions of the Machine's External Options



DOCZIM1401

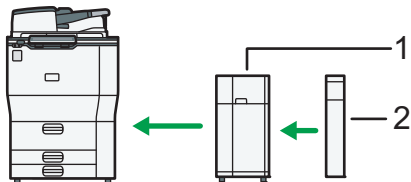
(1) Options Mounted to the Machine's Top Section



DOCMIC1853

No.	Option	Description
1	ADF double-feed detection kit	Detects a double feeding of the original when it is placed in the ADF.
2	Small size paper unit	Used to scan an original smaller than B6 JIS  size with the one- pass duplex scanning ADF.
3	Card reader	Pass an IC card over the card reader to log in to the machine. page 54 "Logging In from the Control Panel" Introduction and Basic Operations

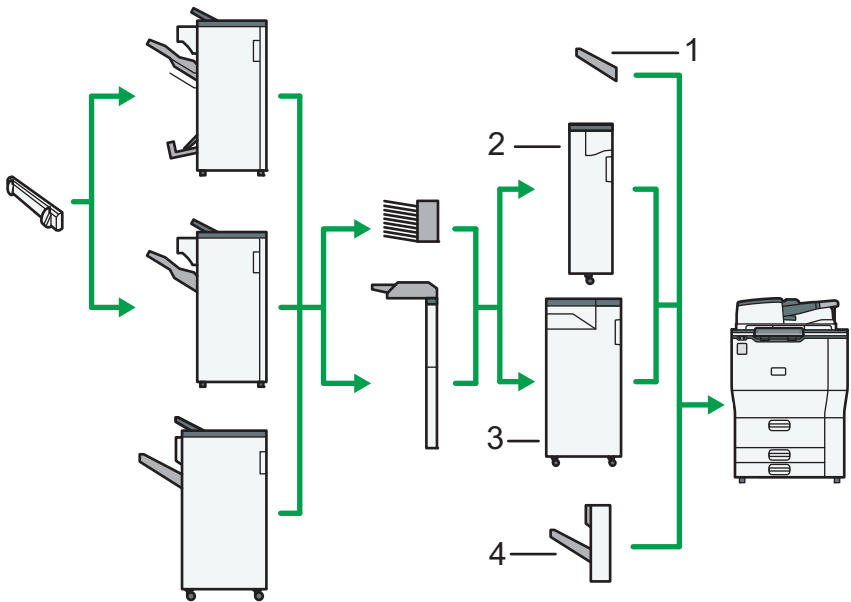
(2) Options Mounted to the Machine's Right Side Section



DOCZIM1402

No.	Option	Description
1	Large capacity tray (LCT)	Holds up to 4,000 sheets of paper.
2	Extension unit of LCT	Attached to the LCT and holds 2,500 sheets of B4 JIS□, A4□, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14□, or 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11□ paper.

(3) Options Mounted to the Machine's Left Side Section 1

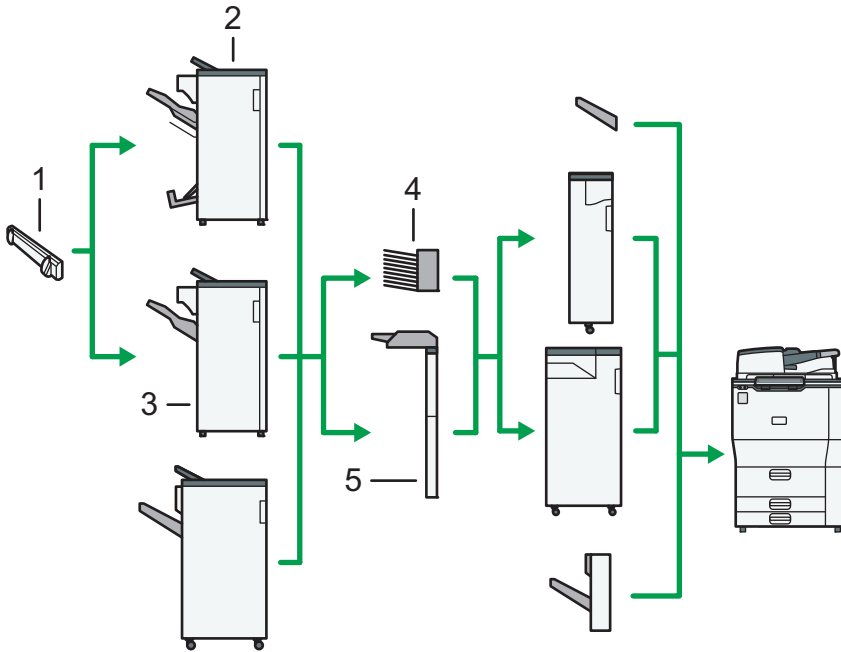


DOCZIM1403

No.	Option	Description
1	Copy tray	If you select this as the output tray, copied/printed paper and fax messages are delivered here face down.

No.	Option	Description
2	Multi-Folding Unit FD4010	The folding unit can apply the following folds: Half Fold, Letter Fold-out, Letter Fold-in, and Z-fold.
3	Multi-Folding Unit FD4020	The folding unit can apply the following folds: Half Fold, Letter Fold-out, Letter Fold-in, Double Parallel Fold, Gate Fold, and Z-fold.
4	Shift tray	Trays that support collating by set.

(3) Options Mounted to the Machine's Left Side Section 2

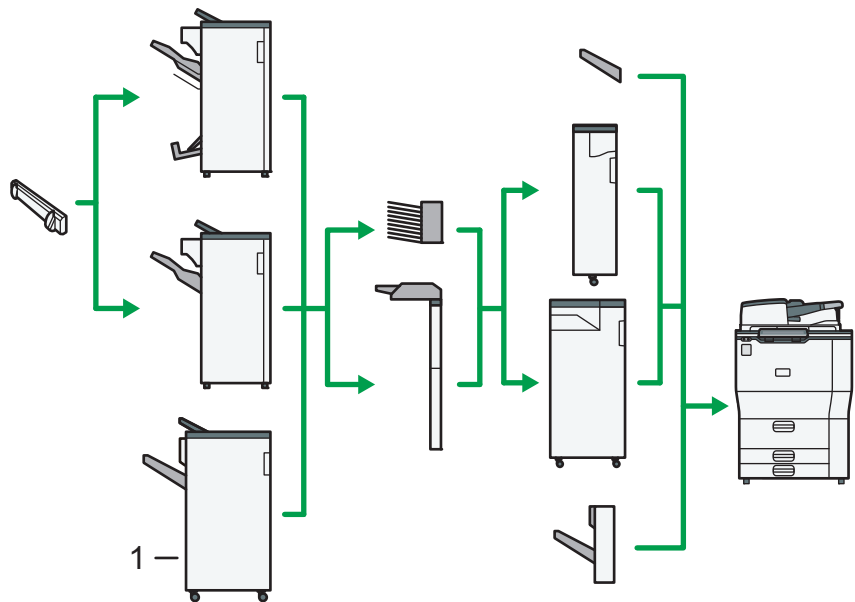


D0CZIM1404

No.	Option	Description
1	Output jogger	Jogs the sheets delivered to the finisher shift tray.

No.	Option	Description
2	Booklet Finisher SR4160	Sorts, stacks, and staples multiple sheets of paper. The saddle stitch function can staple multiple sheets of paper in the center and fold them into booklets. Consists of the following paper trays: • Finisher upper tray • Finisher shift tray • Finisher booklet tray Copies can be punched if the optional punch unit is installed on the finisher.
3	Finisher SR4150	Sorts, stacks, and staples multiple sheets of paper. Consists of the following paper trays: • Finisher upper tray • Finisher shift tray Copies can be punched if the optional punch unit is installed on the finisher.
4	Mailbox	Sorts printed paper. For Finisher SR4150 or Booklet Finisher ST4160. Consists of mailbox output trays 1–9.
5	Interposer	Inserts cover or slip sheets into copied or printed paper.

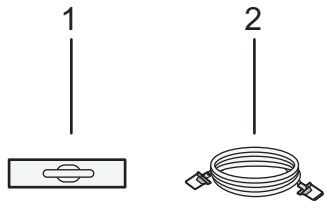
(3) Options Mounted to the Machine’s Left Side Section 3



D0CZIM1405

No.	Option	Description
1	Finisher SR4140	Sorts, stacks, and staples multiple sheets of paper. Consists of the following paper trays: • Finisher upper tray • Finisher shift tray Copies can be punched if the optional punch unit is installed on the finisher.

(5) Other Options



D0MIC1759

No.	Option	Description
1	A3/11 × 17 tray unit	You can load paper sizes up to A3 or 11 × 17 in Tray 1 using this unit. If you install the A3/11 × 17 tray unit on your machine, you cannot use it as a tandem tray.
2	Copy connector	Allows you to use the connect copy function.

↓ Note

- You cannot install multiple finishers simultaneously.
- To use the folding unit, Finisher SR4150, Booklet Finisher SR4160, or Finisher SR4140 is required.
- To use the interposer, Finisher SR4150, Booklet Finisher SR4160, or Finisher SR4140 is required.
- To use the output jogger, Finisher SR4150 or Booklet Finisher SR4160 is required.
- To use the mailbox, Finisher SR4150 or Booklet Finisher SR4160 is required.

Guide to Functions of the Machine's Internal Options

- Fax unit
Allows you to use the facsimile function.
- Extra G3 interface unit
This lets you add a G3 fax line. A maximum of two G3 interface units can be installed.
- Expansion memory
Provides 60 MB of additional memory for the facsimile function. (Standard 4 MB)
This allows you to send and receive fax documents at high resolution (Super Fine), and also to receive fax documents at high resolution (Fine). This enables you to increase the number of sheets of originals that can be stored in memory.
- PostScript 3 unit
Allows you to output using Genuine Adobe PostScript 3.
- OCR unit
Recognizes the scanned originals optically, and creates a PDF with the text data embedded.
- IPDS unit
Allows you to print using Intelligent Printer Data Stream (IPDS).
- XPS card ( Region A (mainly Asia) /  Region B (mainly North America))
Allows you to directly output XPS files.
- Device server option

Allows you to add an Ethernet port to the printer. Allows you to print using the printer function via a network other than that connected to the machine.

- IEEE 1284 interface board

Allows you to connect to an IEEE 1284 cable.

- Wireless LAN board

Allows you to communicate over wireless LAN.

- File format converter

Allows you to download documents that are stored in the Document Server to the computer.

- Data overwrite security unit

Allows you to erase and overwrite the existing data in the machine.

- Enhanced Security HDD ( **Region A** (mainly Europe)/  **Region B** (mainly North America))

Allows you to enhance the security of the hard disk by using an encryption function that is compliant with FIPS 140-2.

- Fax connection unit

Allows you to send and receive faxes via a different machine that has the fax unit installed.

- VM card

Allows you to install applications compatible with the "Embedded Software Architecture" platform.

To expand the function of this machine, various applications written in Java language can be added.

Note

- Only one of the following can be installed: IEEE 1284 interface board, wireless LAN board, file format converter, or device server option.
- Only one of the following options can be installed on the machine at any one time: HDD and Enhanced Security HDD ( **Region A** (mainly Europe)/  **Region B** (mainly North America)).
- The Ethernet interface and wireless LAN board cannot be used simultaneously.

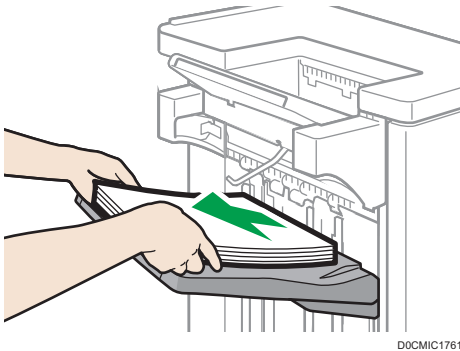
Special Notes When Using External Options

Precautions for Using the Finisher

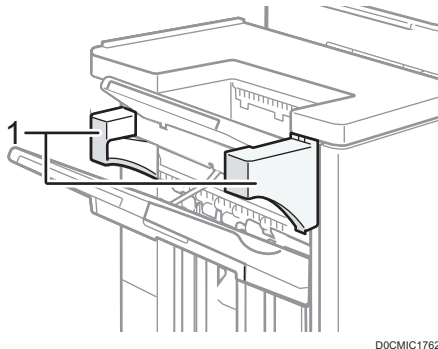
- The stapler may eject unfolded staples. Be careful not to prick your fingers.
- Do not hit the finisher (for instance, do not hit the surface of the finisher repeatedly to arrange stacks of paper neatly).
- Remove printouts from the finisher by lifting them straightforwardly from the left side. If you remove printouts at an angle or towards the front, the shift tray may rise and catch them.

Finisher SR4150/Booklet Finisher SR4160

- Finisher Shift Tray



- When moving Finisher SR4150 or Booklet Finisher SR4160, do not hold the guide covers. Otherwise, the covers might be damaged. the front, the shift tray may rise and catch them.



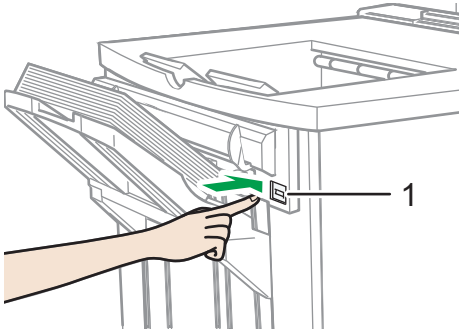
1. Guide covers

Removing Prints from Finisher SR4140 during Printing

This section describes how to suspend a large copy or print job when using Finisher SR4140.

Depending on the image you are copying or printing, prints might not stack properly. If this happens, suspend the job, remove the prints and then restart the job.

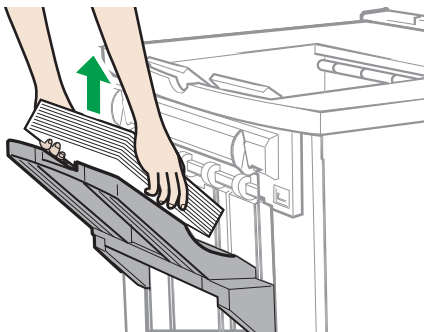
1. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key.



DOC/MIC1766

1. [Suspend / Resume] key

2. Remove the stack of paper from the finisher shift tray.



DOC/MIC1767

3. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key to restart the print.

↓ Note

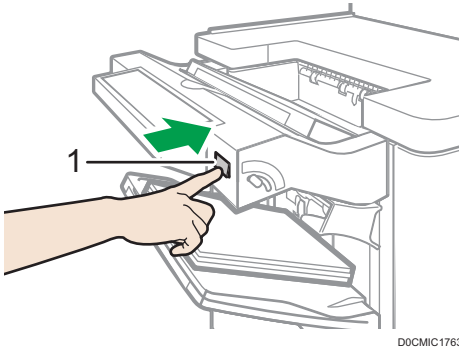
- You can suspend copying or printing only when the finisher shift tray is selected as the output tray.

Removing Prints from Finisher SR4150/Booklet Finisher SR4160 during Printing

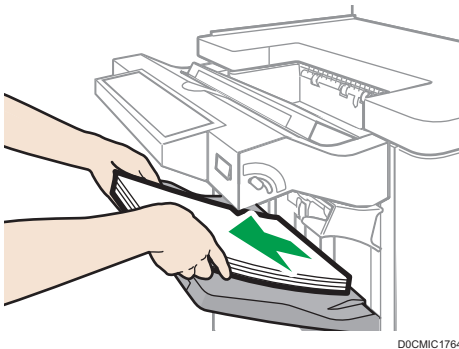
This section describes how to suspend a large copy or print job when using Finisher SR4150 or Booklet Finisher SR4160.

Depending on the image you are copying or printing, prints might not stack properly. If this happens, suspend the job, remove the prints and then restart the job.

1. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key near the paper outlet port.



1. [Suspend / Resume] key
2. Remove the stack of paper from the finisher shift tray.



3. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key to restart the print.

↓ Note

- You can suspend copying or printing only when the finisher shift tray is selected as the output tray.

When Using the Z-fold Function with Multi-Folding Unit FD4020

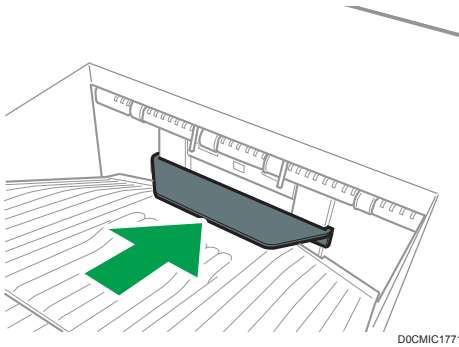
To use the Z-fold function, you must attach the Z-fold support tray.

Finisher SR4140

- Finisher upper tray

1. Remove the output paper.

2. Attach the Z-fold support tray to the finisher upper tray.



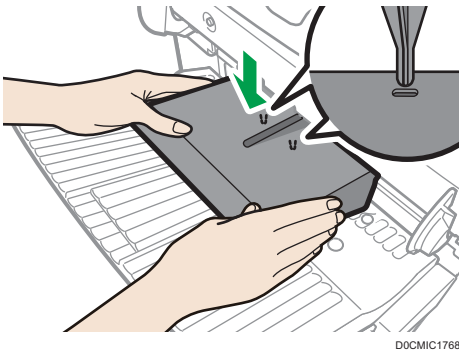
- Finisher shift tray

1. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key.

page 346 "Removing Prints from Finisher SR4140 during Printing"

2. Remove the stack of paper from the finisher shift tray.

3. Attach the Z-fold support tray.



Attach the Z-fold support tray by inserting the two protrusions on its underside into the holes on the finisher shift tray.

4. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key.

Finisher SR4150/ Booklet Finisher SR4160

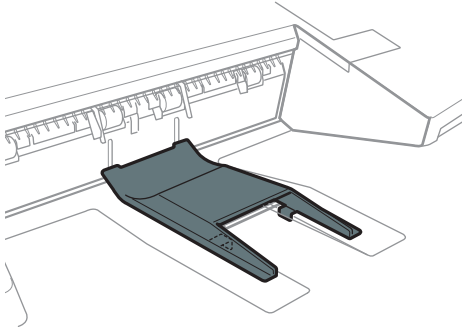
- Finisher upper tray

1. Remove the output paper.

2. Attach the Z-fold support tray 2 to the finisher upper tray.

The back of the Z-fold support tray 2 is embossed with "2".

Z-fold support tray 2



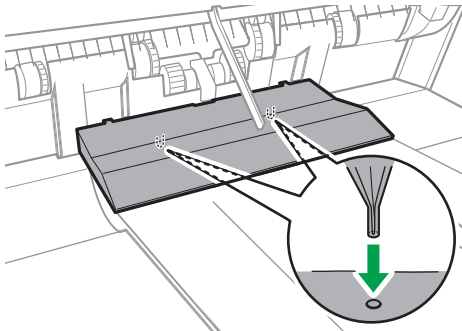
D0CMIC1773

- Finisher shift tray

1. Remove the stack of paper from the finisher shift tray.
2. Attach the Z-fold support tray 3.

The back of the Z-fold support tray 3 is embossed with "3".

Z-fold support tray 3

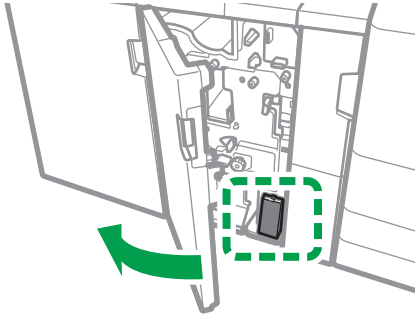


D0CMIC1774

Attach the Z-fold support tray 3 by inserting the two protrusions on its underside into the holes on the finisher shift tray.

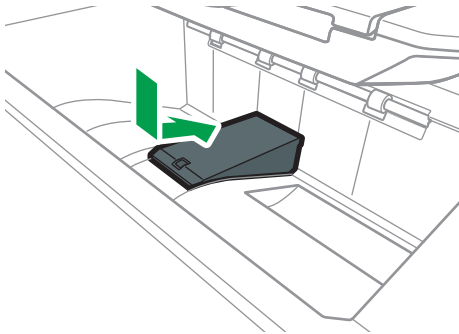
Multi-Folding Unit FD4020

1. Open the front cover of the folding unit and take out the Z-fold support tray for folding unit (located at the bottom of the folding unit).



D0CZIM1406

2. Attach the Z-fold support tray for folding unit in the slope of the folding unit tray so that it is flush against the end fence.



D0CMIC1770

3. Close the front cover of folding unit.

When you have finished using the Z-fold support tray for folding unit, open the front cover of the folding unit and re-attach the tray to its stowage hook.

Functions Requiring Optional Configurations

When options are installed, the functions and interface of this machine can be expanded.

- The options that can be installed differ depending on the models.

page 338 "Machine Options"

Copy Function

Function/Reference	Option
Shift Collate page 82 "Copying in Page Order or for Each Page Number"	One of the following options is required: • Finisher SR4140 • Finisher SR4150 • Booklet Finisher SR4160
Stack page 82 "Copying in Page Order or for Each Page Number"	
Punch See "Punching Holes on the Copied Pages", User Guide (Full Version).	One of the following combinations of options is required: • Finisher SR4140 and punch unit • Finisher SR4150 or Booklet Finisher SR4160 and punch unit
Staple See "Stapling Copied Pages", User Guide (Full Version).	One of the following options is required: • Finisher SR4140 • Finisher SR4150 • Booklet Finisher SR4160
Staple (Center) See "Stapling Copied Pages", User Guide (Full Version).	Booklet Finisher SR4160
Half Fold See "Folding Copied Sheets", User Guide (Full Version).	One of the following options is required: • Either Finisher SR4140 or Finisher SR4150 and either Multi-Folding Unit FD4010 or Multi-Folding Unit FD4020 • Booklet Finisher SR4160

Function/Reference	Option
Z-fold Letter Fold-out Letter Fold-in See "Folding Copied Sheets", User Guide (Full Version).	Any of Finisher SR4140, Finisher SR4150, Booklet Finisher SR4160 and either Multi-Folding Unit FD4010 or Multi-Folding Unit FD4020
Double Parallel Fold Gate Fold See "Folding Copied Sheets", User Guide (Full Version).	Any of Finisher SR4140, Finisher SR4150, Booklet Finisher SR4160 and Multi-Folding Unit FD4020
Connect Copy See "Reducing Copying Time Using Two MFPs", Copy (Classic).	Copy connector

Facsimile Functions

Fax functions require the optional fax unit.

Functions	Option
Transmission of Super Fine resolution See "Sending a Fax at the Image Quality Suitable for the Original", User Guide (Full Version).	Expansion Memory
Reception of Fine or Super Fine resolution	
Transmission using the extra G3 line	Extra G3 interface unit
Routing received documents utilizing extra G3 lines See "Using the Expanded Line to Distribute Documents per Receiving Line", User Guide (Full Version).	
Specify Tray for Lines See "Specifying the Output Tray to Deliver the Received Page", User Guide (Full Version). the Received Page", User Guide (Full Version)	One of the following options is required: • Finisher SR4140 • Finisher SR4150 • Booklet Finisher SR4160

Functions	Option
Tray Shift	One of the following options is required: • Finisher SR4140 • Finisher SR4150 • Booklet Finisher SR4160
Remote Fax ^{*1} See "Overview of the Remote Fax Function", User Guide (Full Version).	Fax connection unit

^{*1} A sub-machine on which fax function is not included can send and receive faxes using the fax function of the main-machine connected via network. This function is available when fax connection units are installed in the main- and sub-machines.

Printer Function

Functions	Option
Shift Collate See "Sorting Printed Sheets by Individual Copies", User Guide (Full Version).	One of the following options is required: • Finisher SR4140 • Finisher SR4150 • Booklet Finisher SR4160
Punch See "Punching Holes on Printed Pages", User Guide (Full Version).	One of the following combinations of options is required: • Finisher SR4140 and punch unit • Finisher SR4150 or Booklet Finisher SR4160 and punch unit
Staple See "Stapling Printed Pages", User Guide (Full Version).	One of the following options is required: • Finisher SR4140 • Finisher SR4150 • Booklet Finisher SR4160
Staple (Center) See "Stapling Printed Pages", User Guide (Full Version).	Booklet Finisher SR4160

Functions	Option
Half Fold See "Folding Printed Sheets", User Guide (Full Version).	One of the following options is required: • Either Finisher SR4140 or Finisher SR4150 and either Multi-Folding Unit FD4010 or Multi-Folding Unit FD4020 • Booklet Finisher SR4160
Z-fold Letter Fold-out Letter Fold-in See "Folding Printed Sheets", User Guide (Full Version).	Any of Finisher SR4140, Finisher SR4150, Booklet Finisher SR4160 and either Multi-Folding Unit FD4010 or Multi-Folding Unit FD4020
Double Parallel Fold Gate Fold See "Folding Printed Sheets", User Guide (Full Version).	Any of Finisher SR4140, Finisher SR4150, Booklet Finisher SR4160 and Multi-Folding Unit FD4020
Genuine Adobe PostScript 3 ^{*1}	PostScript 3 unit
IPDS	IPDS unit
XPS	XPS card ( Region A (mainly Asia)/  Region B (mainly North America))

*1 If an optional Genuine Adobe PostScript 3 is installed, the built-in standard PostScript 3 cannot be used.

Scanner Function

Functions	Option
Creating PDF files with OCR text information See "Scanning an Original as a PDF File with Embedded Text Data", User Guide (Full Version).	OCR unit

Interface

Functions	Option
Wireless LAN communication See "Connecting to a Wireless LAN", User Guide (Full Version).	Wireless LAN board
Parallel Interface Connection See "Connecting an IEEE 1284 Cable", User Guide (Full Version).	IEEE 1284 interface board
Extra Ethernet Interface (for Printer) See "Connecting a LAN Cable", User Guide (Full Version).	Device server option

Function Compatibility

Function Compatibility

The chart shows Function Compatibility when [Interleave Priority] is set to [Switch Every Specified No.].

▲ : Simultaneous operations are possible.

● : Operation is enabled when the relevant function key is pressed and remote switching (of the scanner/external extension) is done.

○ : Operation is enabled when the [Interrupt] key is pressed to interrupt the preceding operation.

→ : Operation is performed automatically once the preceding operation ends.

X : The operation must be started once the preceding operation ends. (Simultaneous operations are not possible.)

	Mode after you select	Copy		Interrupt Copying		Fax				Printer	Scanner	TWAIN	Document Server	DeskTop Binder	Web Document Server				
		Operations for Copying	Stapling	Sort	Operations for Copying	Copying	Transmission		Reception	Print	Scanning	Scanning	Operations for Document Server	Scanning a Document to Store in Document Server	Printing from Document Server	Printing from Document Server	Sending a Fax from Document Server	Printing	
							Scanning an Original for Memory Transmission	Memory Transmission	Immediate Transmission										Memory Reception
Mode before you select	Operations for Copying	X	X	X	○	○	●	●	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	
Copy	Stapling	▲*1	→*1	→*1	○	○	●	●	▲	▲	▲	▲	→	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	
	Sort	▲*1	→*1	→*1	○	○	●	●	▲	▲	▲	▲	→	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	
Interrupt Copying	Operations for Copying	○	○	○	X	X	X	X	▲	▲	▲	▲	X	X	X	X	X	X	
	Copying	○	○	○	X	X	X	X	▲	▲	▲	▲	→	→	X	X	→	X	
Fax	Transmission Operation/Manual Reception Operation	●	●	●	○	○	X	X	X	▲	▲	▲	●	●	●	●	●	▲	
	Transmission	Scanning an Original for Memory Transmission	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	▲	▲	▲	X	X	X	X	X	▲	
		Memory Transmission	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	→	▲
		Immediate Transmission	X	X	X	X	X	X	▲	▲	▲	▲	X	X	X	X	X	▲	→
	Reception	Memory Reception	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲
Printing Received Data		▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	
Printer	Data Reception	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	→	→	→	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	
	Printing	Printing	▲	▲	▲	○	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	→	→	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲
		Stapling	▲	→	▲	○	○	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	→	→	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲
Scanner	Operations for Scanning	●	●	●	○	○	●	●	▲	▲	▲	▲	X	X	●	●	●	▲	
	Scanning	●	●	●	○	○	●	●	▲	▲	▲	▲	X	X	●	●	●	▲	
TWAIN	Scanning	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	▲	▲	X	X	▲	▲	▲	▲	
Document Server	Operations for Document Server	●	●	○	○	○	●	●	▲	▲	▲	▲	●	●	X	X	X	▲	
	Scanning a Document to Store in Document Server	●	X	X	○	○	●	X	▲	▲	▲	▲	●	X	X	X	X	▲	
	Printing from Document Server	●	→	→	○	○	●	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	
DeskTop Binder	Printing from Document Server	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	X	▲	
	Sending a Fax from Document Server	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	
Web Document Server	Printing	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	▲	

*1 Simultaneous operations are only possible after the preceding job documents are all scanned and [New Job] appears.

*2 You can scan a document after the preceding job documents are all scanned.

*3 Simultaneous operations can be performed when a different time is used.

*4 During stapling, printing automatically starts after the current job.

*5 Stapling is not available.

*6 Simultaneous operation becomes possible after you press [New Job].

*7 During parallel reception, any subsequent job is suspended until the reception is completed.

*8 If an attempt is made to manually print a received document while automatically printing a different received document, the document printed manually will be printed first.

*9 This includes the printing of data sent via LAN-Fax driver.

*10 If the previous print job does not finish within the time specified in "the reprinting time of stored documents in memory that could not be printed using LAN-Fax Driver" when printing from the LAN-Fax Driver, printing will stop.

Note

- The scanning speed may become slower when scanning an original with another function while executing printing.

Function Compatibility

The symbols in the cells have the following meanings:

Blank: These modes can be used together.

• These modes cannot be used together. The first mode selected will be the mode you are working in.

• These modes cannot be used together. The second mode selected will be the mode you are working in.

Functions	Function selected first		Function selected second	
	Functions	Mixed Sizes	Regular Size Originals	Custom Size Originals
Function selected first	Mixed Sizes	x	x	x
	Regular Size Originals	x	x	x
	Custom Size Originals	x	x	x
	Original Orientation (Unreadable)			
	Auto Image Density			
	Manual Image Density			
	Auto Paper Select			
	Manual Paper Select			
	Bypass Tray			
	Auto Reduce / Enlarge			
	Reduce / Enlarge			
	Create Margin			
	Original: Spread			
	Original: Two-sided			
	Poster			
	Duplex			
	Combine			
	Spread → 2 Sided			
	Spread → 2 Sided (Spread)			
	Booklet			
	Magazine			
	Mix 1 & 2 Sided			
	Specify Duplex Pages			
	ID Card Copy			
	Double Copies			
	Image Repeat			
	Margin Adjustment			
	Positive / Negative			
	Scan Position			
	Centring			
	Erase Centre			
	Erase Border			
	Erase Inside			
	Erase Outside			
	Background Numbering			
	Preset Stamp			
	User Stamp			
	Date Stamp			
	Stamp Text			
	Page Numbering			
	Unauthorized Copy Prevention			
	Covers			
	Designate			
	Slip Sheet			
	Reverse Ejection			
	3 Edges Full Bleed			
	Sort			
	Rotate Sort			
	Stack			
	Staple			
	Punch			
	Z-fold			
	Multi-fold			
	Half Fold			
	Document Server			

*1 Front Cover, Front/Back Cover, or Designate with 2 Sided → 1 Sided

*2 Top 2 of Staple with Left 2/Left 3/Left 4 of Punch, Left 2/Bottom 1/ Slant of Staple with Top 2/Top 3/Top 4 of Punch, Center of Staple with Punch

*3 Top 1/Slant/Bottom 1/Left 2/Top 2 of Staple with Magazine

*4 When copying onto the covers or designation sheets, you cannot use the Front Cover, Front/Back Cover, or Designate function with the Half Fold function.

*5 Mixed Sizes with the Multi-sheet Fold function

*6 You can use these combinations, but the functions indicated will not be applied to the binding margin.

*7 Preset Stamp, User Stamp, Date Stamp, Page Numbering, or Stamp Text with Bypass Tray

*8 Background Numbering with Slip Sheet

*9 You cannot use the Top 1/Slant/Bottom 1 of the Staple function unless the Auto Paper Select or Auto Reduce/Enlarge mode is enabled.

00000000

12. Legal and Contact Information

Environmental Regulations

ENERGY STAR Program Region **B** (mainly North America)

ENERGY STAR® Program Requirements for Imaging Equipment



This company is a participant in the ENERGY STAR® Program.
This machine is compliant with the regulations specified by the ENERGY STAR® Program.

The ENERGY STAR® Program Requirements for Imaging Equipment encourage energy conservation by promoting energy efficient computers and other office equipment.

The program backs the development and dissemination of products that feature energy saving functions.

It is an open program in which manufacturers participate voluntarily.

Energy Star standards and logos are internationally uniform.

Energy Saving Functions

If this machine remains idle for a specified period of time or when [Energy Save] () is pressed, it enters Sleep mode to further reduce its electrical consumption. This is called "Sleep Mode".

- The machine can print jobs from computers and receive faxes while in Sleep mode.
- The factory default setting for the time it takes to automatically enter Sleep Mode, the power consumption in Sleep Mode, and the time it takes to recover from Sleep Mode and become ready for operation vary depending on the machine model.

Model Name	Power Consumption	Time of Switch into Sleep Mode	Time of Switch Out from Sleep Mode* ¹
IM 9000	 Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 0.55 W  Region B (mainly North America) 0.54 W	16 minutes	60 seconds or less
IM 7000/8000	 Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 0.54 W  Region B (mainly North America) 0.52 W	1 minute	20 seconds or less

*¹ The time it takes to switch out from energy saving functions may differ depending on the conditions and environment of the machine.

 Note

- You can change the amount of time that the machine waits before entering Sleep mode under [Sleep Mode Timer].
- See "Timer Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

User Information on Electrical and Electronic Equipment **Region A** (mainly Europe)

Users in the countries where this symbol shown in this section has been specified in national law on collection and treatment of E-waste

Our Products contain high quality components and are designed to facilitate recycling.

Our products or product packaging are marked with the symbol below.



The symbol indicates that the product must not be treated as municipal waste. It must be disposed of separately via the appropriate return and collection systems available. By following these instructions you ensure that this product is treated correctly and help to reduce potential impacts on the environment and human health, which could otherwise result from inappropriate handling. Recycling of products helps to conserve natural resources and protect the environment.

For more detailed information on collection and recycling systems for this product, please contact the shop where you purchased it, your local dealer or sales/service representatives.

All Other Users

If you wish to discard this product, please contact your local authorities, the shop where you bought this product, your local dealer or sales/service representatives.

For Turkey only

AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

Bu sistem sarf malzemeleri ve yedek parçaları da dahil olmak üzere AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

Üretici:

Ricoh Company, Ltd.

3-6, Nakamagome 1-chome,

Ohta-ku, Tokyo 143-8555 Japan

+81-3-3777-8111 (English only/Sadece İngilizce)

Note for the Battery and/or Accumulator Symbol (For EU countries only)

 Region **A** (mainly Europe)



In accordance with the Battery Directive 2006/66/EC Article 20 Information for end-users Annex II, the above symbol is printed on batteries and accumulators.

This symbol means that in the European Union, used batteries and accumulators should be disposed of separately from your household waste.

In the EU, there are separate collection systems for not only used electrical and electronic products but also batteries and accumulators.

Please dispose of them correctly at your local community waste collection/recycling centre.

Contact your sales or service representative to change the battery.

Environmental Advice for Users Region **A** (mainly Europe)

Users in the EU, Switzerland and Norway

Consumables yield

Please refer to either the User's Manual for this information or the packaging of the consumable.

Recycled paper

The machine can use recycled paper which is produced in accordance with European standard EN 12281:2002 or DIN 19309. For products using EP printing technology, the machine can print on 64 g/m² paper, which contains less raw materials and represents a significant resource reduction.

Duplex printing (if applicable)

Duplex printing enables both sides of a sheet of paper to be used. This saves paper and reduces the size of printed documents so that fewer sheets are used. We recommend that this feature is enabled whenever you print.

Toner and ink cartridge return program

Toner and ink cartridge for recycling will be accepted free of charge from users in accordance with local regulations.

For details about the return program, please refer to the Web page below or consult your service person.

<https://www.ricoh-return.com/>

Energy efficiency

The amount of electricity a machine consumes depends as much on its specifications as it does on the way you use it. The machine is designed to allow you to reduce electricity costs by switching to Ready mode after it prints the last page. If required, it can immediately print again from this mode. If no additional prints are required and a specified period of time passes, the device switches to an energy saving mode.

In these modes, the machine consumes less power (watts). If the machine is to print again, it needs a little longer to return from an energy saving mode than from Ready mode.

For maximum energy savings, we recommend that the default setting for power management is used.

Notes to users in the state of California (Notes to Users in USA) Region **B**

(mainly North America)

Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply. See: www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

Copyright Information about Installed Software

Open source software is used in the machine and applications that can be downloaded from the Application Site. You can check their copyright information in the following settings or applications.

- Some information about software used in the control panel
[Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Machine/Control Panel Information] ► [About Control Panel] ► [Legal Information]
- Some information about software used in the control panel and information about software used in the machine
[Status/Information] ► [Device Info] in Web Image Monitor

Note

- You may be able to check some software information on the screens of each application, rather than on the control panel or Web Image Monitor.

Trademarks (User Guide)

Adobe, Acrobat, PostScript, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ricoh Company, Ltd. is under license.

Firefox is registered trademarks of the Mozilla Foundation.

Dropbox is a registered trademark or trademark of Dropbox, Inc.

Google, Android, Google Drive, and Chrome are trademarks of Google Inc.

Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

JAWS® is a registered trademark of Freedom Scientific, Inc., St. Petersburg, Florida and/or other countries.

Kerberos is a trademark of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT).

Bonjour, macOS, and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, Edge, and Internet Explorer are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corp. in the United States and/or other countries.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED in Japan and in other countries.

The SD and SD logo are trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.



This product includes RSA BSAFE® Cryptographic software of EMC Corporation. RSA and BSAFE are registered trademarks or trademarks of EMC Corporation in the United States and other countries.

The proper name of Edge is Microsoft® Edge™.

The proper names of Internet Explorer 11 is Internet Explorer® 11.

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

- The product names of Windows 7 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 7 Home Premium

Microsoft® Windows® 7 Professional

Microsoft® Windows® 7 Ultimate

Microsoft® Windows® 7 Enterprise

- The product names of Windows 8.1 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 8.1

Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 Pro

Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 Enterprise

- The product names of Windows 10 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 10 Home Premium

Microsoft® Windows® 10 Pro

Microsoft® Windows® 10 Enterprise

Microsoft® Windows® 10 Education

- The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Enterprise Edition

- The product names of Windows Server 2003 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition

- The product names of Windows Server 2008 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise

- The product names of Windows Server 2008 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 Standard

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 Enterprise

- The product names of Windows Server 2012 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 Foundation

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 Essentials

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 Standard

- The product names of Windows Server 2012 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 R2 Foundation

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 R2 Essentials

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 R2 Standard

- The product names of Windows Server 2016 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2016 R2 Essentials

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2016 R2 Standard

- The product names of Windows Server 2019 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2019 Datacenter

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2019 Standard

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2019 Essentials

Wi-Fi® and Wi-Fi Direct® are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

Microsoft product screen shots reprinted with permission from Microsoft Corporation.

MEMO

